



RETAIL  
PRICE  
75 Cents.

Charles Pilsell

March 10  
1892

1790

John  
Gallum

A treaty is an agreement  
or an understanding between  
two parties agreeing to some  
certain things  
Salem fort.

Apr. 1-1775 - Boonsborough  
built late in Spring of 1775.  
The fort at Starrodstown  
was built.

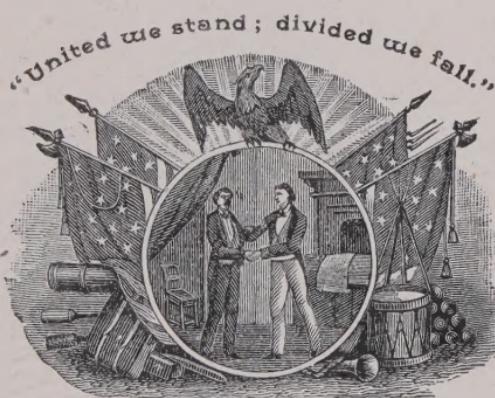
The first divine services were  
held at the same time, Rev.  
Sythe preaching at Boonsbor.  
While two preaches at Starrodsto.

whin  
where  
why & when between whom  
how many on each side  
name of leaders  
number engaged  
described fight.  
result.

# SCHOOL HISTORY OF KENTUCKY

*FROM THE EARLIEST DISCOVERIES AND SETTLEMENTS TO THE YEAR 1891.*

BY Z. F. SMITH.



SEAL OF KENTUCKY.

PREPARED FOR USE IN THE SCHOOLS OF THE STATE

SIXTH EDITION.

LOUISVILLE, KENTUCKY:  
THE COURIER-JOURNAL JOB PRINTING COMPANY.  
1891.

---

COPYRIGHTED 1891.

---

## INTRODUCTORY.

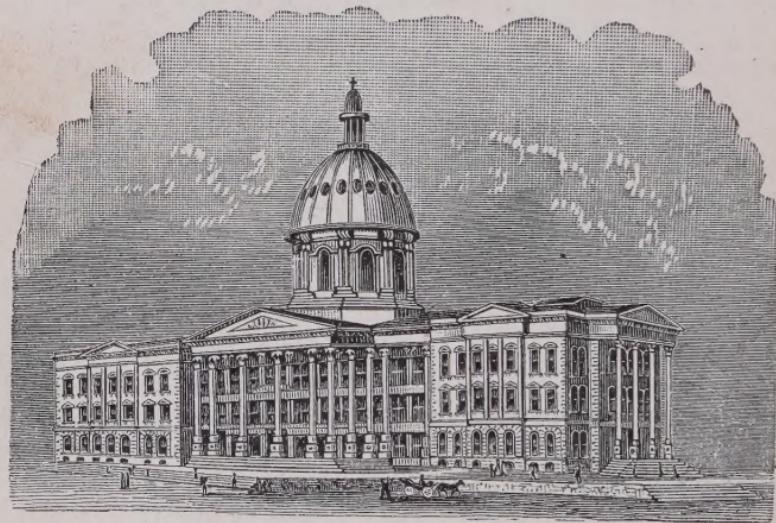
---

The offering of a Pupils' History of Kentucky as a text-book for the public and private schools of our Commonwealth was an enterprise born of no sudden impulse. For many years the author had been impressed that the course of study was seriously defective in our schools, without a study that would familiarly acquaint the children with the history of their own State and its people. Of the many leading educators who have given an opinion on this subject, he can recall but few who have not expressed a like view, and with emphasis.

The aim in this work is to bring the history within the compass and use of the text-book course; and yet to preserve, unbroken, the narrative of events in chronological order. While the multitude of details can not be admitted, yet the main events and episodes around which these cluster are all given.

A word of suggestion to the teacher may be offered here with propriety. Do not make the study of history a process of literal memorizing and cram-work; nor must it be burdened with the heaviness and toil of arithmetic, grammar and logic. It should not be made irksome or distasteful to the child. In the schools of Louisville and elsewhere, some teachers make it a part of the course of supplemental reading; and wisely, too. This is in the direction of the true method of text-books on such subjects. The exercise should aim at not much more than a careful reading and repetition on the part of the pupil, and of general questioning and entertaining comment on the part of the teacher. The interest of narrative will usually command the attention of, and impress the lesson on, the youthful mind. An important function of history and similar studies is to cultivate a taste for reading, for literature, and for the acquisition of knowledge. The function of studies that require memorizing and the severer labor of the mental faculties, is more to train and discipline the mind for the right use of the knowledge acquired.

The method with the teacher should be topical. The main facts of a distinct event or episode of history, grouped in order to constitute a unity and coincidence of the whole, will increase the interest and deepen the impression.



STATE CAPITOL AT FRANKFORT.

TAKEN FROM THE ORIGINAL DESIGN OF THE ARCHITECT.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

### PERIOD FIRST.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | PAGES. |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| CHAPTER I.—Geography of Kentucky—Sources of the seven rivers—Physical map of Kentucky—Latitude and longitude—Importance of location—Origin of the name Kentucky—The wilderness of Kentucky—Visits of Dr. Walker—Visits of Finley and Boone—Dispersion of Boone's party—Boone's brother goes in search of him—The Long Hunters—The hunter's life and habits—No Indians dwelling in Kentucky—Prehistoric remains—Tribal conquests and successions . . . . .                                                        | 9-17   |
| CHAPTER II.—Iroquois conquer the Shawanees—Blackhoof's visit to Kentucky—Indian titles to Kentucky—Rest and preparation—Disaster to a first immigrant party—Others visit Kentucky in 1773—Adventures of Captain Thomas Bullitt—The McAfee party—James Douglas at Big Bone—Prehistoric animals of Kentucky—Other surveys and surveyors—Simon Kenton comes to Kentucky in 1773—First adventure of Harrod and party—Settlements and lottery cabins—Indian troubles overcloud all—Battle of Point Pleasant . . . . . | 18-26  |
| CHAPTER III.—The wilderness deserted for a time—The Cherokees claim title to Kentucky—Transylvania Company formed—The treaty of Wataga—Boone's Trace into Kentucky—Indian ambush and attack—Construction of Fort Boonesborough—Description of the fort—Early life of Daniel Boone—Boyhood days—Boone moves to North Carolina—First excursions—An instrument of Providence—Great work of Boone and comrades—The founder of Transylvania Company—Office opened at Boonesborough . . . . .                          | 27-34  |
| CHAPTER IV.—Return of Harrod's party in 1775—Harrodstown fortified—Settlements of St. Asaph—Simon Kenton returns to Kentucky—Other improvers and settlers—Arrival of the first women and children—Transylvania Company and its troubles—The Transylvania Convention—Laws enacted—A constitutional compact—Protest against Transylvania Company—Virginia asserts authority—A thrilling scene . . . . .                                                                                                            | 35-41  |
| PERIOD SECOND.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |        |
| CHAPTER V.—Visit of George Rogers Clark—Clark's appearance and manners—Clark's jealousy of Transylvania Company—War supplies asked for—Indians attack the convoy—Three girls captured by Indians—The pursuit and rescue—An interval of quiet—Attack on McClellan's Fort—First divine services—Kentucky County organized—England instigates savage warfare—Attack near Harrodstown—General James Ray—Spies sent out—The fight before the fort—Dark days for Kentucky . . . . .                                    | 42-50  |
| CHAPTER VI.—Formidable siege of Boonesborough—Fighting at Logan's Fort—The siege continues—Clark's spies to Illinois—Boone and the salt-makers captured—Boone a pet of the Indians—Life among the Indians—Boone's escape—Formidable attack and siege—Strategy and failure—Clark's plans developed—Marches on Kaskaskia—Capture of Cahokia—Vincennes captured—An immense territory conquered—The bearings on Kentucky—Vincennes lost and captured again . . . . .                                                 | 51-60  |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| CHAPTER VII.—Improvements at Louisville—Fort Nelson built—The corn shelling party attacked—Adventure of Simon Kenton—Kenton's tortures—End of his captivity—Colonel John Bowman's defeat—The attack by Logan—The currency and the lands—The hard winter—Settlements of Lexington—McAfee's station—Massacre on the Ohio . . . . .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 61-67   |
| CHAPTER VIII.—Fort Jefferson built—Chickasaw war—Formidable invasion in 1780—Barbarities practiced—General Clark retaliates—Incidents of 1780—General Clark's naval defense—Adventures of Clark—Designs on Detroit—Massacre of Loughrey's men—Petty hostilities continued—Floyd's defeat—Importation of females—Primitive habits and customs . . . . .                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 68-74   |
| CHAPTER IX.—Needs and supplies of the backwoodsmen—Civil events, 1781-82—Disasters of 1782—Alarm and pursuit—Battle of Little Mountain—Estill's heroic death—Adventure of Captain John Holder—Siege of Bryant's station—The Kentuckians taken by surprise—Siege and re-enforcements—The women bring water—The fighting begins in earnest—The hasty pursuit—Battle of Blue Licks—After the battle—Logan arrives—Capture of Kincheloe's station—Revenge and retaliation—Other incidents of hostilities . . . . .                                                        | 75-86   |
| PERIOD THIRD.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |         |
| CHAPTER X.—Peace with England—Savage tribes quiet—Separate government wanted—Spanish intrigues—Kentucky a judicial district—Industry and prosperity—First foreign goods—Stations around Shelbyville—Captain Bland Ballard—Ambushes three Indians—Indians put to flight—Long Run fight—Ballard, Sr., killed—Captain Ballard's later life—Battle of the Boards—The wild cat and schoolmaster—Death roll of pioneers—Treaty delayed—Virginia's generous gift—Important conference—First convention for separation—Massacre of immigrants—Mrs. McClure's rescue . . . . . | 87-96   |
| CHAPTER XI.—Population of Kentucky in 1786—Virginia's fears—United States Constitution adopted—Washington was the first President—Indian raids renewed—A fruitless campaign—Colonel Logan detached by Clarke—The fourth convention—The first newspaper—Overtures by the Spaniards—The conflict of opinion—The seventh convention—Indian outrages again—A brave woman—A desperate fight on a flatboat—Many other raids and massacres . . . . .                                                                                                                         | 97-106  |
| CHAPTER XII.—State of affairs in 1790—The door opened at last—Indian raids and outrages—President Washington provides relief—Hammer's defeat—Kentucky protests—Desperate attempts on two boats—St. Clair's defeat—First State government—Massacre of Hardin and Truman—Would not the Indians treat for peace—Wayne's great victory—Sympathy for the French—Governor Isaac Shelby—Nicajack Indians in Tennessee—The last Indian incursion into Kentucky—Big Joe Logston's fight—Rest for Kentucky homes . . . . .                                                      | 107-117 |
| CHAPTER XIII.—Courts and legislation—Important treaties—New Spanish intrigues—Spain not yet satisfied—The second Governor of Kentucky—The second President of the United States—Land laws and land titles—Devouring land sharks—Alien and Sedition laws—Centralization—Protest against the Alien and Sedition laws—Kentucky boldly adopts—Last years of Daniel Boone—Of General George Rogers Clark—Simon Kenton shared a fate like Boone's—The second Constitution for Kentucky—Troubles with France—Actual hostilities—African slavery . . . . .                    | 118-128 |

## CONTENTS.

7

## PERIOD FOURTH.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | PAGES   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| CHAPTER XIV.—Nature and customs of the Indians—Gallantry and courtship—Indian hospitalities—Feast or famine—Cunning devices and strategy—Indolence and sporting—Treatment of children—Religion of the Indians—Dances and debauchery—The purchase of Louisiana by France—Election of State officers—Conspiracy of Aaron Burr—Henry Clay settles at Lexington—Clay's early promotion—Bad feeling between United States and England—Prosperity of Kentucky—Battle of Tippecanoe—The great earthquake . . . . .                | 129-138 |
| CHAPTER XV.—Second war with England—Outrages upon the high seas—War spirit in Kentucky—Hull's surrender General Harrison takes command—Battle of Frenchtown—Massacre at Raisin—Cruelty to prisoners—War spirit in Kentucky—Dudley's defeat—The British abandoned the siege—Repulse at Fort Sandusky—Perry's victory on Lake Erie—Invasion into Canada—End of the war in the Northwest—Campaign at New Orleans—Defense of New Orleans—Defenses continued—Battle of New Orleans—End of the second war with England . . . . . | 139-151 |

## PERIOD FIFTH.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| CHAPTER XVI.—Thirty years of peace—The Chickasaw purchase—First banking experiments—Relief and Anti-Relief issues—The Old Court and New Court contest—Increase of population—Other industries of Kentucky—Federal and State jurisdictions—National politics in Kentucky—The three orators of Kentucky—Internal improvements begun—Early religion in Kentucky—Pioneer Roman Catholics—Earliest Methodist ministers—The Presbyterian church—The Disciples church—The Cumberland Presbyterian church—Kentucky politics and finance—National and State elections—Henry Clay again a candidate . . . . . | 152-162 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| CHAPTER XVII.—Agitation of the slavery question—Agitation in Kentucky—A war-cloud appears—Invasion of Mexico—Kentucky volunteers—Capture of Monterey—Battle of Buena Vista—Conquest of Mexico—Treaty of peace—Politics in 1848—Changes by the new constitution . . . . . | 164-169 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| CHAPTER XVIII.—The irrepressible conflict—The Know Nothing Party—Death of Henry Clay—Politics and parties—Pioneer schools in Kentucky—Devices for learning—Transylvania Seminary—County seminaries—Our common school system—Our common schools before the Civil war—Mineral resources—Stock-raising in Kentucky . . . . . | 170-178 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|

## PERIOD SIXTH.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| CHAPTER XIX.—Forebodings of war—The war inevitable—State politics in 1861—Position of neutrality—The Confederate Government—The first gun fired—Preparing for the issue of war—Military position of Kentucky—Battle of Manassas—Battle of Belmont—Both armies occupy Kentucky—The horrors of war—Military arrests and banishments—Battle of Mill Spring—Battles of Forts Henry and Donelson—Capture of Nashville—President Lincoln's proposal—The battles in the South—Morgan's cavalry—Morgan's first raid . . . . . | 179-191 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| CHAPTER XX.—Martial law in 1862—Resignation of Governor Magoffin—Battle of Richmond—Bragg's invasion of Kentucky—Bragg's retreat and failure—Battle of Perryville—Bragg's retreat from Kentucky—Campaigns outside of Kentucky—Morgan's brief raid—Proclamation of freedom—Skirmish battles in Kentucky—Morgan's |  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | PAGES.  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| campaign across the Ohio—Imprisonment and escape of Morgan—Morgan's career and death—Military changes in Kentucky—Guerilla bands—Another reign of terror—The last of the campaigns in Kentucky—The end of the war—Abolition in Kentucky—Comparative size of Kentuckians—Losses of men by the war . . . . .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 192-205 |
| <b>CHAPTER XXI.</b> —Assassination of President Lincoln—Politics and parties in Kentucky—Kentucky relieved of military oppression—Kentucky saved from Carpet-bag rule—Civil order quickly restored—Political parties in 1867—Elections in 1867—Federal and State politics—Governor Stevenson's administration—Common school reform—Official changes—Unanimous sentiment of Kentucky . . . . .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 205-211 |
| <b>CHAPTER XXII.</b> —Rights of citizenship to the colored people—Events under Leslie's administration, 1871-5—Great financial panic of 1873—Governor McCreary's administration, 1875-9—Important legislative acts—State and national elections—Dr. Luke P. Blackburn Governor in 1879—The Superior Court established—Events in Blackburn's administration, 1879-83—Officials elect—Events in Governor Knott's administration, 1883-7—Presidential election in 1884—Important reform measures—Educational conventions—Increase of population—The quadrennial election of 1887—Revenue reform—Railroad improvements—Common school system—Presidential election of 1888—Our National Centennial—The new Alliance party—Provisions for a Constitutional Convention—Important events of 1890—of 1891—Kentucky now, and in the future . . . . . | 212-229 |
| <b>APPENDIX</b> . . . . .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 230-239 |

# SCHOOL HISTORY OF KENTUCKY.

---

## PERIOD FIRST.

FROM THE FIRST DISCOVERIES TO THE SETTLEMENTS AT  
BOONESBOROUGH AND OTHER PLACES IN 1775.

### GENESIS OF KENTUCKY.

#### CHAPTER I.

FROM THE EARLIEST TRADITIONS TO THE VISITS OF THE  
WHITE HUNTERS IN 1771.

1. **Geography of Kentucky.**—Kentucky lies midway in the tier of States bordered on the west by the Mississippi river, and nearly equi-distant from the great lakes on the north and the Gulf of Mexico on the south. The Ohio river borders it on the north, and the Big Sandy in part on the east. It is territorially bounded on the north by the States of Ohio, Indiana and Illinois; on the east by Virginia and West Virginia; on the south by Tennessee, and on the west by Missouri. Its Virginia and Tennessee boundary lines meet at a point in the extreme south-eastern part of the State, where the Cumberland mountains reach a common altitude of sixteen hundred feet above the level of the Atlantic ocean. The two great river mains, the Ohio first and afterward the Mississippi, receive from this territorial surface the waters of Big Sandy, Licking, Kentucky, Salt, Green, Cumberland and Tennessee rivers, and bear them through their channels over a thousand miles away to the Gulf of Mexico.

SCHOOL HISTORY OF KENTUCKY.

2. **Sources of the seven rivers.**—From the lofty apex and slopes of this mountain range, which crosses south-eastern Kentucky from Virginia into Tennessee, begin the sources of these tributary rivers, which form the drainage system of the State. Flowing out north, south and west from the region of their common origin, but each finding a north-westerly course, all finally empty into the gentle and beautiful Ohio, and are borne southward by the channel of the great and turbid Mississippi.

3. **The physical features of Kentucky.**—These present to the eye a picture of rugged mountains in the east and south-east, gradually subsiding westward into hills and knobs, and these fading out within one hundred miles into the more level lands and plains of central and west Kentucky; and the latter skirted at last by the fertile valleys of the Mississippi and lower Ohio rivers, which lie at an altitude of but three hundred feet above the Gulf level. The average elevation above sea-level is near eight hundred feet. From the highest elevation of east Kentucky there is a steady decline of altitude, for more than four hundred miles to the lowest valleys on the extreme west, of over thirteen hundred feet.

4. **Latitude and longitude.**—Kentucky lies between  $36^{\circ} 30'$  and  $39^{\circ} 06'$  north latitude, and  $82^{\circ} 02'$  and  $89^{\circ} 41'$  west longitude from Greenwich. The extreme length of the State is four hundred and fifty-nine miles, and its greatest breadth is one hundred and fifty-six. With unequal sides and irregular boundaries, it is difficult to reduce or define the contents of this area with accuracy. It embraces about forty-one thousand two hundred and eighty-three square miles. It has that medium of climate which is mild and temperate, and usually healthy and invigorating.

5. **Importance of location.**—In its early history, when the title to the great Mississippi Valley was under question by

Spain, France and England, the position of Kentucky was important from the fact that its shores control the navigation of the Mississippi river for over fifty miles, and the Ohio for seven hundred. These and the seven other rivers named, give to Kentucky a navigable river frontage of over four thousand miles—more than that of any other State.

6. **Origin of the name Kentucky.**—Through the midst of the rich bluegrass region ran one of the rivers of which we have spoken, which had cut its channel four hundred feet deep in the rocky bed over which it flowed. On either side, amid pastures of wild clover, bluegrass and cane, game most abounded; and here lay the favorite hunting grounds of the Red men. The Indians called this region, in their tongue, *Kentuckee*—“At the head of a river”; and from this title the white man gave both to the river and country the name—Kentucky.

7. **The Wilderness of Kentucky.**—This lay five hundred miles west of the colonies on the Atlantic slopes, and the great Allegheny range of mountains stretched across the continent like rugged barriers midway between. From 1654 to 1750, it was viewed at times by white men venturing down the Ohio and Mississippi rivers, and in rare visits of explorers through the forest. In 1751, Captain Gist led an exploring party as far as the Kentucky river, and up the same on his way to North Carolina in the interest of the Ohio Land Company. From his report Lewis Evans, of Philadelphia, printed a map of middle North America, in 1755, including this territory.

8. **Visits of Doctor Walker.**—In 1750, Doctor Walker, of Virginia, in company with others, made a visit to Kentucky by way of Powell’s Valley and a gap in Laurel mountain. To this mountain and the river on this side, the doctor gave the name of *Cumberland*, for the Duke of Cumberland, which name they yet bear. A second visit was made by the same

party in 1758; but they gained only partial knowledge of the wilderness land.

9. **Visits of Finley and Boone.**—The truer aspects of Kentucky were viewed by John Finley and a party of comrades in 1767. Returning to North Carolina with wonder and delight at what they had seen of the country, they planned another visit in 1769. With Finley to pilot them, under the lead of the noted Daniel Boone, this party went out from the valley of the Yadkin river, North Carolina. These hunters reached the foot hills of the mountains in June, and built a cabin camp on Red river near the junction of Estill, Clark and Powell counties. From this camp they hunted and explored until December.

10. **Dispersion of Boone's party.**—Happy and contented, this party spent the summer and autumn, hunting and roving over the valleys of Elkhorn, the brakes of Dick's river, and the pasture grounds of Stoner and Licking. The country seemed a paradise for the hunters. But for a time, a startling event broke up this charmed life. Boone and John Stewart, while out hunting, were captured by a band of Indians. They were marched by day and watched by night until, on the seventh night after their capture, they made their escape. Making their way back to camp, they found it deserted; and no information of Finley and his comrades could they obtain. Boone and Stewart lived for months in the wilderness upon wild meat and fruits, and without bread or salt.

11. **Boone's brother goes in search of him.**—Squire Boone, late in 1769, left home, in North Carolina, with one companion, to find the party of his brother Daniel. Late in December the brothers met in the solitudes of the great wilderness, and gladly greeted each other. Squire Boone's companion returned home, and John Stewart was one day shot by the Indians. The two Boones were now alone in the vast

forests until May, 1770. Squire Boone then ventured home to return again with ammunition and supplies, leaving Daniel alone in the forests for months. The two daring brothers hunted and explored the wilderness for many months before they returned to their homes, Daniel being absent nearly two years.

12. **The Long Hunters.**—In 1769, forty adventurous hunters came into Kentucky from the valleys of the Holston,



JOHN FILSON.

THE FIRST HISTORIAN OF KENTUCKY. 1784.

New and Clinch rivers, led by Colonel James Knox. Their first camp was made at Price's Meadow, near a flowing spring, about six miles from Monticello, in Wayne county. Here they also made a depot for the supplies and skins which they agreed to deposit every five weeks. They hunted out as far as the present counties of Green, Barren and Hart, and on the waters of Dick's river. They built another camp and depot nine miles east of Greensburg, near the site of

Mount Gilead church. They were absent two years; so long that on their return they were called the "Long Hunters."

13. **The Hunter's life and habits.**—Boone's party and the Long Hunters did not meet, and neither knew of the presence of the other, being in different sections of the

country. The garb of these backwoodsmen was a loose frock, with cape made of deer skins dressed, called a hunting-shirt; leggings of the same material covered the lower limbs, with moccasins for the feet. The cape, the coat and the leggings were often adorned with fringes. The undergarments were of coarse cotton cloth. A leather belt encircled the body; on the right side hung the hatchet or tomahawk; on the left was the hunting-knife, the powder-horn and bullet-pouch. Each man bore his trusty, flint-lock rifle, ever on the alert for deadly foes or welcome game.

**14. No Indians dwelling in Kentucky.**—It was notable that these hunting parties found Indians often, but no Indian villages in Kentucky. The great tribal wars had driven the Shawnee Indians north of the Ohio to build their lodges on the Scioto, the Miami and the Muskingum rivers, and left Kentucky to become the common hunting ground of those tribes and the Wabash Indians on the north, and the Chickasaws, Cherokees and Choctaws of the Tennessee valley on the south. From these opposite abodes would often issue forth bands of savages going out for the hunt, yet always painted and armed to act the part of warriors when those of hostile tribes met. While traversing the forest and roving over the fertile lands of Kentucky, where the buffalo, the deer, the bear and lesser game most abounded, these warriors would meet and re-enact the bloody tragedies for which Indian warfare has ever been noted. From these scenes of strife and its past traditions, Kentucky came to be known as the "Dark and Bloody Ground."

**15. Pre-historic remains.**—Only the Indian tribes are known to history to have dwelt in the valleys of the Ohio and Mississippi rivers. But ancient mounds, earthworks and relics, found scattered over these valleys, give evidence that a much older race of people, and much farther advanced in the arts and in civilization, dwelt here centuries before the

Indians. Many of these mounds and relics are found in Kentucky. Of the origin of this ancient and extinct people we know nothing except by the fabled story, curious records and antique remains. The Indians related to the pioneer whites a tradition which they said their fathers had handed down, that ages before such a people dwelt in these valleys, and that their tribes engaged them in war, and destroyed them in a great final battle at the Falls of Ohio.

**16. Tribal conquests and successions.**—The restless and roving habits of the Indians forbade that their tribes should grow large in numbers, while their cruel and warring spirit led to the frequent destruction or dispersion of other tribes; and hence, they often changed their places and conditions. The Shawnee Indians held their homes in Kentucky before the year 1700, and until 1753, but were often at war with tribes north and south of them.

---

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

---

### CHAPTER I.

- 1. Geography of Kentucky.**—What rivers and States bound Kentucky? What mountains in the South-east? What is their common elevation above the sea? What seven rivers drain Kentucky?
- 2. Source of the seven rivers.**—Where do these seven rivers head? What courses do they flow? What two rivers carry these waters to the Gulf of Mexico?
- 3. Physical map of Kentucky.**—What of the surface of east Kentucky? Of central and west Kentucky? What elevation have the valleys of the Ohio and Mississippi rivers? What is the common altitude of Kentucky? What is the decline in elevation from east to west?
- 4. Latitude and longitude.**—In what latitude does Kentucky lie? In what longitude? What is the extreme length of Kentucky,

east and west? Its extreme breadth north and south? How many square miles does it embrace? What of its climate?

5. **Importance of location.**—To what countries was the location of Kentucky important? What great navigable rivers did it contain? What is the total navigable frontage, or shore lines, of Kentucky?
6. **Origin of the name Kentucky.**—From what was Kentucky named? What of this river, and the country adjacent? What attracted hunters there?
7. **The Wilderness of Kentucky.**—How far was it from the colonies? What mountains lay between? When, and how, was it seen only by transient adventurers? In what year did Gist explore it? What map of this country was soon after published?
8. **Visits of Dr. Walker.**—When was Walker's first visit made? When the second? To what objects did he give names?
9. **Visits of Finley and Boone.**—When was Finley's first visit? When his second? Who led the second party with Finley? Where was the home of Daniel Boone? Where did the Boone party build their camp? How long did they hunt from this camp?
10. **Dispersion of Boone's party.**—Over what grounds did Boone and comrades hunt? Who were captured by the Indians? What became of the captives? What became of their comrades? What of the camp?
11. **Boone's brother goes in search of him.**—When did Squire Boone find his brother? How many other men were there with them? What became of John Stewart? What of Squire Boone's companion? What journey did Squire Boone make? What became of Daniel? How long was he absent on this adventure?
12. **The Long Hunters.**—How many hunters were in this party? From whence did they visit Kentucky? In what year? Where was their first camp? How far out did they hunt? Where was their second camp? How long were they absent? Who led them?
13. **The hunter's life and habits.**—What was the dress of the backwoodsmen? Of what material was it made? How were they armed and equipped? What kind of guns were then used?
14. **No Indians dwelling in Kentucky.**—Were Indian villages found in Kentucky in 1769? Why? What great tribe was last

driven out? Where did these locate? What did Kentucky then become? What opposing warriors met here? How did they treat each other? What name did this strife give Kentucky?

15. **Pre-historic remains.**—Is there evidence that any other people lived here before the Indians? What is this evidence? Have we any history of them? What do tradition and these curious remains say of their civilization?
16. **Tribal conquests and successions.**—What effect do the habits of the Indians have on their tribal conditions? When did the Shawanees occupy Kentucky?



## CHAPTER II.

FROM THE VISITS OF THE WHITES, 1771, TO THE ENTRANCE OF  
THE SURVEYORS AND SETTLERS, 1774.

1. **Mohawks conquer the Shawanees.**—About 1660, the Menguys of the North-east, with fire-arms, came down the Ohio in large war parties, laid waste the country and conquered the Shawanees whose weapons were yet but arrows and tomahawks. In 1700 they repeated this conquest, and so weakened this tribe that the Cherokees, Chickasaws and Choctaws came in from the South and drove them north of the Ohio river. After this no Indian villages were known to exist between the Ohio and Cumberland rivers.



BLACKHOOF (CATAHECASSA).

SHAWANEE CHIEF, BORN AT INDIAN OLD FIELDS,  
IN CLARK COUNTY, DIED IN 1831,  
NEARLY 120 YEARS OLD.

2. **Blackhoof's visit to Kentucky.**—In 1816, Blackhoof, the great chief of the Shawanees, visited Kentucky, being then one hundred years of age. He stated that he was born at *Indian Old Fields*, in Clark county, which place has been known as the site of an Indian town. Blackhoof readily pointed out and described other objects and things in that section familiar to his boyhood days.

3. **Indian titles to Kentucky.**—The Six Nations claimed title to Kentucky by right of conquest, and the English purchased this title of them at (18).

the treaty of Fort Stanwix, in the State of New York, in October, 1768. Also the Shawanees claimed title by virtue of former occupancy; and ceded their title to Governor Dunmore, of Virginia, at the treaty at Chillicothe, 1774. Finally the following year, 1775, the Transylvania Company, through Daniel Boone, purchased the main area of Kentucky of the Cherokees, at the council of Fort Wataga, held in what is now the territory of Tennessee. In spite of these treaties and transfers of titles by the Indians, the brave and daring pioneers were compelled to win their homes and purchase security of life and property by deeds of heroic valor, and with the friendly aid of their trusty rifles.

4. **Rest and preparation.**—The Boones, the Long Hunters and others seemed to have rested at their homes for two years after their return. Their stories of the wonderful land they had explored, and their adventures as hunters and rangers, fired the spirits and ambition of many to join them in the next expedition. So deeply in earnest were Daniel Boone and others, that they sold out their farms and fixtures to enter the wilderness, and to make it their final home. On September 25, 1773, Daniel Boone, with his own and five other families, left the Yadkin valley upon the journey toward Kentucky. In Powell's Valley, forty resolute men joined them and their fortunes. *✓*

5. **Disaster to a first immigrant party.**—Driving their cattle, and with bedding and baggage on pack-horses, the weak and frail on horseback and the more stalwart on foot, the long cavalcade pursued its way, in file along the narrow and winding paths through the forest, over mountains, across the valleys and streams, and amid the under-brush, until they neared Cumberland Gap. Suddenly, a party who had fallen in the rear was fired upon by Indians, and six killed before all could rally and drive off the enemy. Among the dead was a son of Daniel Boone. The disaster so saddened

all, that the party turned at once and went back to their homes.

6. **Others visit Kentucky in 1773.**—Virginia now granted bounties in lands, to be located in the Ohio Valley, to her citizens who had served in the Canada war against the French. This gave new impetus to explorers and land hunters. Washington's deputy came West as far as Big Sandy river and surveyed 2,084 acres of land at the present site of Louisa, in Lawrence county, in 1769, and carved his name on the beginning corner tree. In June, 1773, four parties from Virginia passed down the Ohio, led respectively by Captain Thomas Bullitt, James Harrod, James Douglas and the McAfee brothers.

7. **Adventures of Captain Thomas Bullitt.**—After visiting Chillicothe and holding a council with the Shawnee Indians, and tarrying with the others at Big Bone Lick, Captain Bullitt and party passed down to the Falls of Ohio, July 8th, and camped above the mouth of Beargrass creek. For six weeks they surveyed the lands over, and adjacent to, the site of Louisville, and southward as far as Salt river, in Bullitt county. These were the first surveys ever known to have been made in this section.

8. **The McAfee party.**—Separating from the others at Big Bone Lick, and turning their light canoes into the mouth of Kentucky river and landing at Drennon's Lick, they beheld immense herds of buffalo, deer and elk dispersed over the valley in quest of the salt and sulphur waters. After several days' delay they continued their journey to Frankfort, the site of which they then surveyed. Passing on by Lillard's Spring, east of Lawrenceburg, they camped and surveyed lands on Salt river, a few miles below the site of Harrodsburg. In August they crossed Dick's river and returned to Virginia by the Forks of the Kentucky, after great privations in the mountains.

**9. James Douglas at Big Bone Lick.**—Douglas remained longer to examine and survey the new wonders which surprised the adventurers. Here, too, countless herds of buffalo, deer, elk and other wild animals passed to and fro along their beaten paths, which connected the salt and sulphur waters with the pastures of bluegrass and clover and the brakes of cane that lay in their courses. Over an area of ten acres around the lick was bare of trees and herbage, and beaten down and worn below the original surface, several feet. Within this space were vast numbers of the bones of the gigantic mastodon or mammoth, and of the arctic elephant. In the midst of this space ran the creek, on either side of which were never failing springs of salt water. From this lick diverged the beaten roads which led to the grazing lands of the bluegrass region.

**10. Pre-historic animals of Kentucky.**—From whence came these gigantic mammoths, five times as large as the elephant? Only tradition answers; and we are left to conjecture. Possibly, they were here before any race of men occupied the country. Such huge, ponderous and awkward animals would fall an easy prey to the hunter's arts of any intrepid race. They were very powerful in strength, but too sluggish to defend themselves against the attacks of enemies. No doubt they were rapidly exterminated by the early people who found them here, both for food and to gratify the hunter's passion. The skeleton remains of these wonderful creatures were eagerly sought, and borne away to enrich the museums of Europe, as well as of America.

**11. Other surveys and surveyors.**—Kentucky was part of Fincastle county, Virginia, of which William Preston was surveyor. Hancock Taylor, James Douglas and John Floyd, his deputies, were now in Kentucky surveying and locating choice lands for themselves and capitalists attracted by the fame of the country. Colonel Floyd became famous among

the pioneers. He had three brothers and two brothers-in-law slain by the Indians, to whose vengeance he also fell a victim, in time. His parents settled early in Jefferson county, and died, aged ninety years. Colonel Floyd's maternal grandmother was an Indian squaw, the niece of Powhatan, and cousin of Pocahontas. He was the wise counselor and active defender of the settlers until his death.

**12. Simon Kenton comes to Kentucky in 1773.**—Simon Kenton, the famous comrade of Boone in hunting and fighting Indians, was born of Irish parents, in Fauquier county, Virginia, April 13, 1755. At sixteen he fell madly in love with a pretty neighbor girl. Beaten in his wooing by another, he provoked a battle with his rival, and left him dead, as he supposed, on the field of strife. Fleeing justice as a man-slayer, he sought refuge in the backwoods of Virginia, and at Fort Pitt, now Pittsburgh, changing his name to Simon Butler. From the latter place he ventured down the Ohio with George Yeager and John Strader, looking for the "*Cane land*," of which the Indians and explorers had given glowing accounts. They hunted and trapped for furs from the Kanawha to the Kentucky rivers, until early in 1773, when Yeager was killed by the Indians. Kenton and Strader escaped and returned. In the summer after, Kenton piloted a party down the Ohio, as far as the mouth of Big Miami river, and through the wilderness of Kentucky back to Virginia. He became one of the heroes of our pioneer history, and rejoiced to learn, in after years, that his rival did not die of his injuries.

**13. First adventure of Harrod and party.**—Favorable was the spring of 1774; gloomy was its autumn. In May, Captain James Harrod, with Abram Hite and the two Sanduskys, led forty woodsmen from the Monongahela country, Virginia, down the Ohio river, tarrying in camps at the mouth of Licking, and felling the first trees upon the site of

Cincinnati. Embarking again, they next turned the prows of their little boats into the mouth of Kentucky river, and plied their oars until they reached the present Oregon Landing, in Mercer county. Landing there, they explored inland and built at the Big Spring on the present site of Harrodsburg.

**14. Settlements and lottery cabins.**—From Big Spring camp many dispersed to chosen spots near, to locate claims and to build such improvements as would secure them. These improvements were known as "lottery cabins," as they were given out by lot. Thus, John Crow, James Brown and others located near Danville; James Harrod and others at Boiling Spring, six miles south of Big Spring; and James Wiley and neighbors, three miles east of same. Harrodstown was plotted and laid off at Big Spring near this spot; John Harman, this year, 1774, planted and raised the first corn known to have grown at that place.

**15. Indian troubles overcloud all.**—A surveying party was attacked by Indians three miles below Big Spring, and Jared Cowan killed, and several others driven off to the Falls of Ohio. About this time, Hancock Taylor, at the head of a surveying party, was killed in Carroll county near the mouth of Kentucky river. At the same time, Daniel Boone and Michael Stoner reached Harrodstown with a message from Governor Dunmore, of Virginia, warning and ordering all persons in the Wilderness to return at once to Virginia. The Shawnee Indians and confederate tribes had planned a campaign into Virginia on a large scale. The lives of all backwoodsmen were endangered, and their return was needed to repel the invaders. Captain Harrod and all with him returned to Virginia at once. Governor Dunmore had ordered the enlistment of three thousand men to meet the invading foe.

**16. Battle of Point Pleasant.**—General Andrew Lewis, an old border leader, led the left wing of this army, crossing the mountains to the Kanawha river with eleven hundred veteran pioneers. He met the Indian army under the lead of the great chief, Corn Stalk, fifteen hundred strong, and engaged them in battle at Point Pleasant near the mouth of Kanawha river. The contest was fierce, long and bloody, but the savages were defeated and driven over the Ohio, back to their tribal homes. Governor Dunmore, with the right wing of the army at Pittsburgh, had moved down the Ohio. Learning of the victory, he crossed over, marched to Chillicothe, and dictated terms of peace with the vanquished savages, who ceded all title to Kentucky and pledged not to molest the white occupants again. The future for the bold and adventurous backwoodsmen now seemed again full of cheerful promise and hope.

---

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

---

### CHAPTER II.—1771-74.

- 1. Iroquois conquer the Shawanees.**—When did the Menguys, or Six Nations, first conquer the Shawanees? When a second time? ✓ What advantage in arms had they? ✓ What tribes afterward drove them north of the Ohio?
- 2. Blackhoof's visit to Kentucky.**—When was it? Of what tribe was he a chief? Where was he born? And when?
- 3. Indian titles to Kentucky.**—What of the claim of the Six Nations? ✓ When was their title purchased? By whom? ✓ What was the second Indian claim? ✓ To whom was this ceded? ✓ What was the third Indian claim? ✓ What company purchased this title? Were these purchases and treaties respected by the Indians? ✓ What did they compel the pioneers to do? ✓

4. **Rest and preparation.**—How long did Boone and the Long Hunters tarry at home? What effect did their reports have? What did Boone and his comrades do? Who joined them in Powell's Valley?
5. **Disaster to a first immigrant party.**—How did Boone and his party begin their journey to Kentucky? What disaster beset them? What did they do afterward?
6. **Others visit Kentucky in 1773.**—What act of Virginia favored immigration? What survey did Washington make? Who led exploring parties down the Ohio in 1773?
7. **Adventures of Captain Thomas Bullitt.**—What Indian town did he visit? Where did he tarry? Where did he last camp? Where did Bullitt survey?
8. **The McAfee party.**—Where did they separate? What river did they enter? What lick did they tarry at next? Where did they go from Drennon's lick? Where from Frankfort? When did they start back to Virginia?
9. **James Douglas at Big Bone.**—What game did he find there? Where did the buffalo paths lead? What impression did the buffalo make around the lick? How did the springs appear?
10. **Pre-historic animals of Kentucky.**—What skeleton remains were found at Big Bone? When did these animals probably exist here? What became of them finally? Why were they easily slain by hunters? What became of these skeleton remains?
11. **Other surveys and surveyors.**—Of what county was Kentucky a part? Who were surveyors in this county? What of Colonel Floyd's brothers? His parents? Who was his maternal grandmother? What of his character?
12. **Simon Kenton comes to Kentucky in 1773.**—Where was his native place? What incident drove him from home? Where did he first go? From Fort Pitt where did he go? Who were his companions? What became of Yeager? Where did Kenton go in 1774? Did his rival die from his injuries?
13. **First adventure of Harrod and party.**—From where and in what year did they come to Kentucky? Where did they tarry? Up what river did they come? Where did they finally locate?
14. **Settlements and lottery cabins.**—Why called lottery cabins? What settlements were thus made? What town was there laid off? Who raised the first corn in Kentucky?

15. **Indian troubles overcloud all.**—Who was killed near Big Spring? Who near the mouth of Kentucky river? What messengers warned in Harrod's party? Why did Governor Dunmore send them? What did Harrod and party do? What did Lord Dunmore do?

16. **Battle of Point Pleasant.**—Who led the frontiersmen in this campaign? Near the mouth of what river was the battle fought? What was the result? After the victory, what did Dunmore do? Where did he make a treaty with the defeated Indians?



## CHAPTER III.

FROM THE DUNMORE WAR TO THE CONSTRUCTION OF BOONES-BOROUGH AND THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE TRANSYLVANIA LAND OFFICE—1774-75.

1. **The Wilderness deserted for the time.**—After the recall of the explorers by Governor Dunmore the year before, Kentucky seemed deserted until the early spring of 1775. Yet, the auspices were good. Harrod and his men had borne the news of their experiences back to the Virginia homes, and spread it among their comrades in the army of General Lewis. Dunmore's treaty gave assurance that the Northern Indians would no longer molest the settlers. The restless desire to seek homes and fortunes and adventures in the far off wilderness toward the sunset possessed the hearts of many.

2. **The Cherokees claim title to Kentucky.**—The great Cherokee nation inhabiting the upper Tennessee valleys asserted a third claim of title to the disputed wilderness land. The Revolutionary War for independence made the claim of England to any territory in America doubtful. Virginia's title was disputed by these Indian claims, and might be made void by the war with the Mother Country. Taking advantage of these doubts and disputed titles, a great company was organized to purchase and occupy the territory of Kentucky under this Cherokee claim, and thus lay the foundation for an independent State or Empire west of the mountains, to be governed by able and ambitious leaders.

3. **Transylvania Company formed.**—In the spring of 1775, Richard Henderson, Nathaniel Hart and six others of Granville, North Carolina, formed themselves into a land and

improvement company, styled the "Transylvania Company," for an enterprise on a gigantic scale in the great and expansive West. They commissioned Daniel Boone to visit the Cherokee nation and negotiate a treaty for the purchase of the territory of Kentucky under their title.

4. **The treaty of Wataga.**—By agreement with Boone, a council was called to meet at Sycamore Shoals, on the Wataga, a tributary of Holston river. For ten thousand pounds, the tribe ceded to this company all the tract of land afterward called by the name of *Transylvania*, and lying between the Ohio and Cumberland rivers, and west and south of the Kentucky river, stretching from the site of Nashville to the site of Louisville, an area equal to two-thirds of present Kentucky.

5. **Boone's trace into Kentucky.**—Daniel Boone was at once employed to open a path for men and pack-horses, from Holston river to the mouth of Otter creek, on Kentucky river, known after as "Boone's Trace." His party of thirty men was made up of Squire Boone, Richard Calloway, John Kennedy, William Twetty and others, who carved the trace, or path, with ax and tomahawk, which to-day forms a common thoroughfare through Richmond and Cumberland Gap into Tennessee and Virginia.

✓ 6. **Indian ambush and attack.**—As Boone's party neared the site of Richmond, on the 25th of March, just before the dawn of day they were fired into by Indians, and three killed and wounded. Boone rallied his men and drove off the enemy. Two days after, the wary savages fired on a detachment of six of Boone's party, killing and wounding three more. Caring for the dead and wounded, they moved April 1st on to the Kentucky river to the site selected to be fortified. ✓

7. **Construction of Fort Boonesborough.**—On arrival there, Boone and his men began and erected two cabins, so connected

with palisades as to make of the structure a stockade fort. Three weeks after, Colonel Henderson, President of Transylvania Company, re-enforced this advance party, swelling the garrison to *sixty guns*—in pioneer phrase. The site and plan of the fort were now fully laid out, and the work of construction rapidly carried to completion.

#### 8. Description

of the fort.—It was situated near the river bank and extended back with parallel sides. The length of the fort was about two hundred and sixty feet, and the breadth one hundred and fifty, in square. The houses of hewn logs were placed in line. The cabins were square in form and two stories in height. One of these cabins projected from



DANIEL BOONE.

each corner of the fort, the spaces between being occupied with intervening cabins and palisades, thus guarding the four sides. The gates were on opposite sides, made of thick slabs of timber and hung on wooden hinges.

**9. Early life of Daniel Boone.**—The brightest dream of ambitious hope was now realized to Daniel Boone. We pause awhile to dwell upon the incidents of his early life. Boone was born at Exeter, Pennsylvania, July 13, 1732. He was one of the eleven children of Squire and Sarah Boone. His home was upon a farm which lay on the right bank of the Delaware river, then surrounded by almost unbroken forest. Here Boone learned his first lessons, and acquired that passion for hunting and for the solitudes of the wilderness which were the ruling impulses of his life.

**10. Boyhood days.**—In his boyhood days he often roamed the woods in search of sport and game, with an old flint-lock rifle for his companion. While yet a boy he remained in the woods for two days and nights on one of his hunting excursions. The alarmed family and neighbors joined in search of the lost one. By the smoke rising in the distance, they found him in a rude camp which he had built, seated upon the skin of a wild animal he had slain, while pieces of meat were roasting at the fire.

**11. Boone moves to North Carolina.**—The schooling of Boone was of the rudest sort in the rudest of log school houses. We only know that he learned to read and write imperfectly. In 1752 he moved with his father's family to North Carolina, and settled on Yadkin river, near Wilkesboro. In 1755 Boone was married to Rebecca Bryan, a pretty rustic maiden of the country. To this wedlock were born five sons and four daughters. Of the sons, James and Israel fell in battle with the Indians.

**12. First excursions.**—From his home on the Yadkin, Boone indulged his passion for hunting in long and distant excursions over the mountains of the West and through the wilds of nature. In 1760 he led a company as far westward as Abingdon, Virginia, and there left them. Pursuing his journey he penetrated still deeper into the mysteries of

the forest. On a beech tree near the stage road from Jonesboro to Blountsville, Tennessee, are yet to be seen these words, which he then carved :

*"D. Boone CilleD A. BAR On Tree in The yEAR 1760."*

13. **An instrument of Providence.**—Daniel Boone seems ever to have recognized himself as called in the providence of God for the mission of pioneering and subduing the wilderness for the habitation of civilized men. He says in Filson's autobiography : " ' My footsteps have often been marked with blood. Two darling sons and a brother have I lost by savage hands, which have also taken from me forty horses and an abundance of cattle. Many dark and sleepless nights have I been a companion for owls, and often scorched by the summer's sun and pinched by the winter's cold—an instrument ordained to settle the wilderness.' "

14. **Great work of Boone and comrades.**—The lapse of a century but enables us to enlarge our views and estimates of the vastness and value of the services and sacrifices rendered by Boone and his comrades to the human family and to civilization. To appreciate their merits, we must consider the obstacles to be overcome, as well as the ends and results to be attained. In the light of both these, we may justly rank Boone and his adventurous and heroic comrades, of whom this history makes mention, with Cecrops, the founder of Athens ; or Cadmus, the founder of Bœtia ; or with Romulus and his hardy followers, who founded Rome. The deeds of daring and of heroism of no explorers and founders in ancient or modern history surpass, if they equal, those of the pioneers of Kentucky.

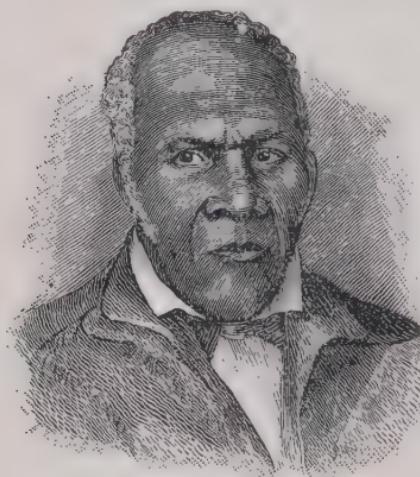
15. **The founder of Transylvania Company.**—Judge Richard Henderson was born in Virginia, but moved with his parents to Granville, North Carolina. Raised in poverty, his education was limited ; yet by studious diligence and energy, he attained a high rank in the legal profession, and

was appointed Associate Chief-Justice. Amid the turbulent scenes of the Revolutionary War, just begun, Henderson and comrades embarked in the enterprise of founding an independent government out of the wilderness west of the mountains, in the name of the *Transylvania Company*.

16. **Office opened at Boonesborough.**—Colonel Henderson opened an office for the sale of lands in Transylvania soon

after his arrival, in the spring of 1775, and issued warrants for the same in the name of his company. The price of lands was fixed for one year, at thirteen and one-third cents per acre, and half a cent per acre annual quit-rent, to begin in 1780, which released the purchaser from all other charges by the company. Any settler might enter six hundred and forty acres for himself at these rates. The effect of this apparent posses-

sion and steady settlement of the country attracted many, and by December five hundred and sixty thousand acres were thus sold.



UNCLE DICK HART,  
THE FIRST SLAVE AT BOONESBORO, 1775.

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

---

### CHAPTER III.

1. **The Wilderness deserted for the time.**—What report did Harrod's men bear to their comrades in Virginia? What assurance did Dunmore's treaty give? What effect had the information on the people?

2. **The Cherokees claim title to Kentucky.**—Where did the Cherokee Indians reside? What claim did they set up? What effect had the war of the Revolution on these claims? What advantage did a great land company take of this dispute?
3. **Transylvania Company formed.**—What company was formed? When? Who were the leaders? Of what town and State were they? Who was their agent to buy of the Cherokees the land of Kentucky?
4. **The treaty of Wataga.**—Where was the council with Indians held? On what river? What boundary of land was ceded in this treaty? What price was paid? How much of Kentucky territory did it embrace?
5. **Boone's trace into Kentucky.**—What road did Boone lay out? What was it called? What comrades were with him? What road is on this route now?
6. **Indian ambush and attack.**—Where was Boone's party attacked by Indians? When? With what result? What did Boone do? What happened two days after? What did the party do on April 1st?
7. **Construction of Fort Boonesborough.**—What improvements were first made toward a fort? Who came three weeks after? What was the number of men after? Did they aid and enlarge the work?
8. **Description of the fort.**—What of its location? What were the length and breadth of the fort? How were the cabins placed? What of the corner cabins? What of the palisades, or palings, between the cabins? What of the gates?
9. **Early life of Daniel Boone.**—When was Boone born? Where? Who were his parents? On what river was his early home? What were his early habits?
10. **Boyhood days.**—What was Boone's boyhood sport? What anecdote is given of his early passion for camp-life? How was the lost boy found? What was he doing?
11. **Boone moves to North Carolina.**—What schooling had he? To what place did his father remove? When? Whom did he marry? When? How many children had he? Whom of these were slain by Indians?
12. **First excursions.**—What of the habits of the man? Where did he lead a party in 1760? Where did he then go? What did he write on a tree? Where was the tree?

13. **An instrument of Providence.**—What reverent impression had he? What did he say of this in his life written for him by Filson?
14. **Great work of Boone and comrades.**—What must we now think of Boone's work? Of that of his comrades? With what ancient heroes may we compare them?
15. **The founder of Transylvania Company.**—Who was he? Where was he born? Where did he live? What of his life? What great enterprise did he embark in? What led him to this bold venture?
16. **Office opened at Boonesborough.**—For what did Henderson open this office? When? What rate per acre was the company's land sold at the first year? At what quit-rent, beginning in 1780? How many acres could be allotted at these rates to each settler? What effect had this on immigration? How many acres were sold that first year?



## CHAPTER IV.

FROM THE PERMANENT SETTLEMENT BY BOONE, HARROD AND LOGAN TO THE REMOVAL OF THE FIRST WOMEN AND CHILDREN TO KENTUCKY—1775-6.

1. **Return of Harrod's party in 1775.**—Three weeks before Boone reached the mouth of Otter creek, Captain James Harrod had returned with his party of the year before to their *lot-cabin* settlements at Harrodstown and vicinity. The McAfee and other smaller parties, who followed him in, made the number of adventurers in this section then about one hundred. Hearing of the Indian attacks on Boone's party as it came in, some forty of these detached newcomers with Harrod took the alarm and left for the old settlements again, by way of Boone's Trace. Colonel Henderson met them as he came in from Cumberland Ford to Crab Orchard, and persuaded some to turn back with him, which they readily did.

2. **Harrodstown fortified.**—Though Captain Harrod settled at Boiling Spring, six miles out on the road to Danville, he seems to have been the leader and ruling spirit of all interests in that section. Harrodstown was soon fortified. The stockade fort, much like that at Boonesborough, was located south of the old spring, and on the brow of the hill adjacent. It became the rallying point for McAfee station, Boiling Spring, the Danville settlements, and others within the cluster. Of the comrades of Harrod who were most active and noted in the events of backwoods life, we may mention the names of Slaughter, Chaplain, McBride, Ray, Harlan, Hite and McGary, among others equally worthy.

3. **Settlement of St. Asaph's.**—The large flowing spring, one mile west of the present town of Stanford, was made the

site of a third important settlement during the spring of this year. Colonel Benjamin Logan was the founder of this settlement, which was more commonly known as Logan's Fort. Colonel Logan was born in Augusta county, Virginia, of Irish parents. At the age of fourteen, as eldest son, he undertook the support of his widowed mother and family, and faithfully devoted himself to this work until they were comfortably settled. In 1774, he was in the campaign with Governor Dunmore against the Indians. In 1775 he resolved to come to Kentucky and make it his future home. Selecting St. Asaph's Spring, he and his party built here a stockade fort and within it their rude cabin homes. He and William Galaspy, with several servants, raised small crops of corn and vegetables in their clearings this year, as did many settlers elsewhere.



CAPTAIN SIMON KENTON.

THE COMPANION OF BOONE, AND ONE OF THE MOST  
DARING AND SKILLFUL HUNTERS AND  
INDIAN FIGHTERS OF KENTUCKY.

4. **Simon Kenton returns to Kentucky.**—Since 1773, Kenton had spent his time in the hunter's camp and as a spy in the service of Lord Dunmore's army in 1774. In May, 1775, in company with Thomas Williams, he reached the mouth of Limestone creek, entered the forest and built a camp within a mile of Washington, Mason county. They cleared an acre of ground, planted it in corn and ate the roasting-ears that year. While the two were hunting near the Blue Licks they fell in with Fitzpatrick and Hendricks, who seemed to have been lost in the forest. Hendricks joined their camp while they piloted Fitzpatrick to the Ohio river, on his way back to Virginia. On reaching their camp again,

they found the charred remains of Hendricks. The Indians had captured and burned him at the stake in their absence.

5. **Other improvers and settlers.**—There came this year the Wells brothers and seven others, who camped on Limestone, in Mason county, and surveyed fifteen thousand acres of land; the McClellands, McConnells, Robert Patterson and followers, who improved and fortified at Royal Spring, now Georgetown; Hinkson's party, who settled on South Licking; Lindsey, Jordan and comrades, who improved at Drennon's Lick; Haggin, Williams and others, who located Martin's station, near Lair's depot. On the 19th of April, 1775, the first battle of the Revolution was fought at Lexington, Massachusetts. Some weeks after, Lindsey, Jordan and Vance, from Drennon's Lick; Lee and Shannon, from Royal Spring, and others, camped on the present site of Lexington, Kentucky. The news came that day that the Americans had beaten the British, and in honor of the victory these pioneer hunters gave the name Lexington to the spot, which it has ever since borne.

6. **Arrival of the first women and children.**—This event of the year was hailed as one of the most auspicious and happy by the pioneers. It was Boone's suggestion. Resolute in his purpose to found his home for life in Kentucky, he set out with a small party to North Carolina to bring to his Eden wilds his wife and children. The trip resulted in the arrival at Boonesborough, September 26th, of the wives and families of Boone, Richard Callaway, William Poague and John Stager; and at Harrodstown, those of Hugh McGary, Richard Hogan and Thomas Denton. The little colonies now seemed more homelike, and with a new spirit of content society varied its charms.

7. **Transylvania Company and its troubles.**—There were about three hundred men in the vicinity of Boonesborough, Harrodstown, Logan's Fort, and other points in Kentucky,

by June, 1775. The title to the country of the Transylvania Company was conceded by many who purchased lands from it. Others relied upon the title of Virginia and refused to recognize the claims of Henderson and party. The leaders of *Transylvania* attempted to form a government and to establish laws over the country and its people. They invited delegates from Harrodstown, Logan's Fort, and other points, to convene at Boonesborough.

8. **The Transylvania Convention.**—From a copy of the original minutes, we learn that this convention “*begun on Tuesday, May 23d, in the year of our Lord, 1775, and in the fifteenth year of the reign of his Majesty, King of Great Britain.*” The delegates present were: *For Boonesborough*—Squire Boone, Daniel Boone, William Coke, Samuel Henderson, William Moore and Richard Callaway. *For Harrodstown*—Thomas Slaughter, John Lythe, Valentine Harman, and James Douglas. *For Boiling Spring*—James Harrod, Nathan Hammond, Isaac Hite and Azariah Davis. *For St. Asaph*—John Todd, Alex. Dandridge, John Floyd and Samuel Wood.

9. **Laws enacted.**—After opening with prayer by Rev. John Lythe, the Assembly proceeded to enact the following laws: For establishing courts of judicature and regulating the practice therein; for regulating the militia; for the punishment of criminals; to prevent profane swearing and Sabbath breaking; for writs of attachment; fixing clerks' and sheriffs' fees; to preserve the range; for improving the stock of horses and for preserving game. The convention then adjourned to meet again at Boonesborough in September following.

10. **A constitutional compact.**—A sort of constitutional compact was next drawn up and signed by Henderson, Hart and Luttrell, on the part of the Transylvania Company, and Thomas Slaughter, chairman of a committee assuming to represent the convention and the people. The articles thus

drafted and signed, eighteen in number, gave final disposal and kingly jurisdiction to the members of the company over the liberties and rights of the people. They were craftily drawn with the motive of assuming almost royal power over the government in contemplation. This was not so plainly seen at once, but the wiser and bolder men of the settlements soon understood the motives of this company and its leaders, and began active opposition to its claims soon after.

**11. A protest against the company.**—This was hastened by an unwise attempt on the part of the managers to advance the price of lands and the fees of entry. It was signed by eighty-four of the better men among the settlers, some of whom had been delegates in the late convention. This protest was addressed to the government of Virginia, with provision that it be laid before the Assembly of that State for action, and for disposal of the question as to whether Virginia claimed Kentucky as yet a part of her territory, or yielded title to Great Britain. It will be seen at the sitting of the convention that Henderson and associates recognized the lawful reign of "*His Majesty, King of Great Britain*," which was a fact as yet. The company would be loyal to either.

**12. Virginia asserts authority.**—The people and the company urged opposing claims before the Assembly of Virginia, and that body took action in due time, declaring that the title and claim of Transylvania Company to Kentucky under the pretended Wataga purchase was null and void. In consideration, however, of their trouble and outlay in settling the country, Virginia gave to the company two hundred thousand acres of land lying on both sides of Green river, and just above the mouth of same. As the Wataga purchase took in a large fraction of Tennessee now lying between Cumberland river and the Kentucky line, which was then the territory of North Carolina, the Assembly of that State took similar action to that of Virginia. Thus ended the dream of empire to the rulers of Transylvania.

13. **A thrilling scene occurs.**—In the proceedings of the council at Wataga, a chief of the Chickamaugas, Dragging Canoe, opposed the sale of Kentucky to the whites. In an impassioned speech he lifted his arm and pointed his finger to the north-west and sternly said: "*Bloody ground!*" and then pausing a moment, stamped his foot and continued, "*and dark and difficult to settle!*" The squaw of the great chief, Oconistoto, aroused with suspicion, rushed forward with frantic and hysterical cries, and for a time stopped all negotiations. Order and confidence were finally restored, and the treaty signed. Then a chief who had signed came forward to Boone and taking him by the hand, said: "*Brother, we have given you a fine land, but you will have much trouble in settling it.*" From the utterances here by the Indians, it is plausibly believed the whites first began to style Kentucky "*The Dark and Bloody Ground.*"

---

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

---

### CHAPTER IV.

1. **Return of Harrod's party in 1775.**—To what place did they return? What other parties came out then? How many adventurers were in the Harrodstown vicinity early in 1775? What effect had the Indian attacks on Boone's party on these? How many left to return home? What did Henderson do?
2. **Harrodstown fortified.**—Where was the stockade fort located? Of what places was it the rallying point? Who were noted comrades with Harrod?
3. **Settlement of St. Asaph.**—Near what present town was it? Who was the founder and leader? Where was Colonel Logan born? What of his early life? In what campaign was he in 1774? When did he come to Kentucky? What did he and Galaspy do in 1775?

4. **Simon Kenton returns to Kentucky.**—How had he spent his time since 1773? Where did he settle in 1775? What planting did he and Williams do? Whom did they find near Blue Licks? What of Fitzpatrick? Of Hendricks?
5. **Other improvers and settlers.**—Who came near to Kenton's settlement in 1775? How many acres did they survey? Where is Royal Spring? Who improved there this year? Who located on Licking? Who at Drennon Springs? Who at other points? Why was Lexington so named?
6. **Arrival of the first women and children.**—Who brought out the first women to Kentucky? When? Whose wives and children came first to Boonesborough? Whose to Harrodstown?
7. **Transylvania Company and its troubles.**—How many men were in Kentucky by June, 1775? Did all concede the title of lands to be in the Transylvania Company? What other claim disputed this? What did the company attempt to do by a convention?
8. **The Transylvania Convention.**—When did it assemble? From whence were the delegates? Who were they?
9. **Laws enacted.**—How was the convention opened? How many laws were enacted? State some of them?
10. **A constitutional compact.**—Who signed for the company? Who for the settlers? How many articles were in the compact? What was the nature of these? How did the people afterward view them?
11. **Protest against Transylvania Company.**—What excited opposition? What did the people do? How many signed this protest? To whom was it addressed?
12. **Virginia asserts authority.**—What did the Virginia Assembly do? Did not this cause the purchasers to lose their lands? What compensation did Virginia give the company for its labors and expenses? What did North Carolina do?
13. **A thrilling scene.**—Occurred where? Who was the speaker? What did he say of Kentucky? Whose squaw stopped the proceedings? What followed then? What warning was given Boone by a chief? What was Kentucky afterward called?

## PERIOD SECOND—1776-1783.

FROM THE FIRST PERMANENT SETTLEMENTS IN KENTUCKY,  
1775, TO THE TREATY OF PEACE THAT ENDED  
THE WAR OF THE REVOLUTION.

---

### CHAPTER V.—1776-7.

FROM THE EARLIEST VISIT OF CLARK TO THE FIRST ATTACK  
ON BOONESBOROUGH.

1. **First visit of Clark.**—Early in 1775, George Rogers Clark made known his presence at Harrodstown suddenly, and without heraldry, a man yet to become the most important actor in the drama of destiny for Kentucky, and for the great North-west beyond the Ohio river to the Mississippi and the lakes. He was born in Albemarle county, Virginia, November 19, 1752. At twenty-two years of age, we find him at the head of a company in the army of Dunmore and Lewis, repelling the great Indian invasion into Virginia in 1774. He next declined a high commission in the British army, expecting soon to join the American troops in the threatened war of the Revolution.

2. **Clark's personal appearance.**—He impressed all who came into his presence. In person, six feet three inches in height, and of well-formed body and shapely limbs, his imposing dignity commanded deference from all. Yet so gentle and affable was he that he won the *confidence and friendship* of those around him. It was thought by some that he came to Kentucky with private instructions from Patrick Henry, then Governor of Virginia. He was fairly educated for the

times, and of thoughtful and observing mind ; he devoted himself to the study of books, but much more to the study of men and things. He mixed freely with the settlers and informed himself of the geographic, civil and military relations of the country, taking great interest in the future welfare of the infant colony.



GENERAL GEORGE ROGERS CLARK.  
WHO CONQUERED THE NORTH-WEST COUNTRY  
FROM THE BRITISH DURING THE WAR  
OF THE REVOLUTION, 1778.

3. **Clark's jealousy of Transylvania Company.**—He seemed specially watchful of Colonel Henderson and the leaders of Transylvania Company, and sought to acquaint himself fully with their plans and operations. It is plausibly thought by many that he was meditating the best means for defeating the purposes of this company, in concert with the government of Virginia. In the autumn, Clark returned to Virginia, spent

some months, and then came back to Kentucky in the spring of 1776. On the sixth of June, a meeting for counsel at Harrodstown selected Clark and Gabriel Jones as delegates to the Assembly of Virginia to represent their interest. On reaching the seat of government, Clark laid before the Governor and Assembly the condition and wants of Kentucky, Jones being absent.

4. **War supplies asked for.**—Clark applied for five hundred pounds of gunpowder for border defense. After some doubts and hesitation on the part of the Assembly, Clark boldly told them that if Virginia refused aid, Kentucky would become independent of her and assume her own defense. The powder was soon ordered shipped to Pittsburgh

55 76  
67

and down the Ohio river, under guard. Indian spies, learning of the shipment, followed the little cargo into Kentucky. It was landed on the banks of Limestone creek in Mason county and concealed in the woods.

5. **Indians attack the convoy.**—Captain John Todd, with ten men, undertook to carry the powder safely to the forts, Boonesborough and Harrodstown. The Indians attacked them near Blue Licks, killing and wounding several. Clark hastily led back a party from Harrodstown and brought in the powder safely. During this year, 1776, the settlers were molested but little by the Indians, until July, and they improved their opportunities for building and clearing.

6. **Three girls captured by the Indians.**—On July 14th, a thrilling episode occurred. Elizabeth and Frances Callaway and Jemima Boone left the fort at Boonesborough for a boat ride upon the river. They innocently rowed to the opposite bank, and out of the reach of the guards on duty. Suddenly a small band of ambushed Indians leaped into the water, seized the boat, and bore to the shore the captive maidens. Elizabeth Callaway boldly struck and gashed an Indian's head to the bone with her paddle; but it availed nothing to avert their fate. They were hurried into the woods and out of sight from the fort.

7. **The pursuit and rescue.**—Boone, Callaway, Floyd, Samuel Henderson, John Holder, Flanders Callaway, the last three lovers of the maidens, and two other comrades, made up the pursuing party of eight. They swiftly trailed the Indians northward, by Winchester, North Middletown and Carlisle, and until Tuesday, the third day after the capture. Near Blue Licks, forty miles away, they suddenly came upon the captors in camp, with the maiden captives sitting near, under guard. The white party quickly raised their deadly rifles and fired upon the savages. Luckily the five Indians were killed, wounded, or dispersed to the woods,

and the maidens, unharmed, were the next moment in the embraces of the rescuers. The lovers all afterward married.

8. **An interval of quiet.**—Until midsummer, 1776, the settlers in Kentucky were but little disturbed. Settlements were made at Leestown, near Frankfort; at Kennedy's creek and Stoner's Fork, in Bourbon county; at Sandusky station in Washington county; and by William Whitley, two miles from Crab Orchard, in Lincoln county. Marauding bands of Indians suddenly appeared at different points early in July. Hinkson and other settlers on the Licking were attacked, and several killed. These important posts were soon deserted, some taking refuge at Boonesborough and Harrodstown, and others in McClelland's fort at Georgetown Spring. Colonel Floyd wrote that more than three hundred left the country this year, and that not many immigrants were coming in.

9. **Attack on McClelland's fort.**—Colonel Patterson, the leading spirit, with six others, left Royal Spring station for Pittsburgh to obtain powder and other supplies. They were attacked by Indians on the Kanawha river while asleep in camp, and all killed or wounded but one. Patterson was laid up for twelve months with wounds. On December 29th, McClelland fort at Royal Spring, with its garrison of twenty men, was attacked by fifty Indians under the noted Mingo chief, Pluggy. McClelland and two of his men were killed and four wounded. Pluggy was slain among others of his warriors, when they were driven off. This station was soon after abandoned.

10. **First divine services.**—Rev. John Lythe, of the Church of England, conducted the first religious services which were known to be held at Boonesborough. The first preaching in Mercer county was at Big Spring, now within the limits of Harrodsburg, by Revs. Peter Tinsley and William Hickman, Baptist ministers, from the text, "Let

me die the death of the righteous ; and let my last end be like his." The services were under the shade of a great elm tree, the stump and roots of which were remaining in 1873. There may have been other religious services, and in other places, even earlier than these, of which history does not give account. And such were the feeble beginnings of the great work done by Christianity for Kentucky.

**11. Kentucky County organized.**—Hitherto Kentucky was but a district of Fincastle county, Virginia. The need of county officers and organization was being felt. The Assembly of Virginia passed the act, December 6, 1776, to organize Kentucky county out of the territory "lying south and west of a line beginning on the Ohio, at the mouth of Big Sandy, and running up the same, and the north-east branch thereof, to the great Laurel Ridge mountain, and with that to the line of North Carolina." Then Kentucky chose her own magistrates and police, two representatives in the Virginia Assembly, and had her own military officers, sheriff and other county officers.



A BAPTIST MINISTER, WHO PREACHED THE FIRST KNOWN SERMON IN KENTUCKY, 1776.

**12. England instigates savage warfare.**—In 1777 the Revolutionary War had been in progress nearly two years. From the forts held by the British in the North-west, this cruel nation bribed and incited the savage tribes to wage a continuous war of murder and rapine upon the border settlers. This policy was then, and for twenty years after,

both in times of peace and war, repeatedly pursued by the officers and agents of this powerful empire. Such atrocious and cruel conduct planted the most intense hatred in the hearts of Kentuckians for two generations after.

**13. Attack near Harrodstown.**—James Ray, William Coomes and Thomas Shores were clearing land at Shawanee Springs, three miles east of Harrodstown. A band of some forty Indians, passing a sugar camp near, came suddenly upon Ray and Shores and fired upon them, Coomes having concealed himself. Young Ray, known as the fleet-footed, outran all the Indians and gave the alarm at the fort. Shores was captured and held several years among the savages. Captain McGary rallied thirty men and pursued the Indians, but failed to overtake them. A few days after, these Indians stealthily invested Harrodstown. The garrison finding out their presence sallied forth and drove off the savages, with sharp loss.

**14. General James Ray.**—This noted pioneer was an adventurous youth in his day. A month or two after, he shot an Indian while hunting two miles out. Several savages sprang from cover and gave chase, but Ray outstripped them all. On reaching the fort, the gates were closed, and the Indians in sight behind. Ray threw himself behind a stump near the pickets for shelter. No one dared to go to his rescue, while the Indians were firing within range. In this dilemma he cried out, “For God’s sake dig a hole under the picket and take me in!” This was promptly done. Young Ray’s services were invaluable in supplying the garrison with game, even when the Indians infested the woods.

**15. Spies sent out.**—Under order of Colonel Clark, Kenton and Thomas Brooks, Samuel Moore and Bates Collier, and John Conrad and John Martin, were sent out as spies upon the borders of the Ohio and about the deserted stations. They went by twos in turn each week, looking for Indian

signs. Soon after, a body of Indians suddenly assaulted Boonesborough. They pursued two hunters, and tomahawked one within gunshot of the fort gate. Kenton, standing at the gate, shot the savage dead. Calling to the garrison for help, Kenton, with his spies, gave chase to the savages.

16. **The fight before the fort.**—Boone followed out with ten men. Indians from ambush gave battle. Kenton, seeing an Indian sight his rifle at Boone, quickly shot him dead. A party of fourteen whites soon found themselves surrounded by a large body of the enemy. Boone, noting the danger, gave the order, "*Right about, fire! charge!*," and the men made a desperate effort to regain the fort. Half were wounded, Boone among them with a broken leg. An Indian sprang to tomahawk him, when Kenton, with ever ready rifle, sent the fatal bullet through his heart; then lifting Boone in his arms, bore the veteran safely into the fort. When the gate was closed, Boone quietly said: "Well, Simon, you have behaved yourself like a man to-day; you are a fine fellow." The Indians finally retired to the woods.

17. **Dark days for Kentucky.**—Virginia, deeply involved in the Revolutionary war, could spare no aid for her distant colonists. Many weak settlements were broken up by frequent Indian raids, and large numbers of the settlers left in despair to return to Virginia and Carolina. In backwoods phrase, the garrison of Boonesborough was now reduced to *twenty-two guns*; of Harrodstown, to *sixty-five guns*, and of Logan's Fort, to *fifteen guns*.

---

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

---

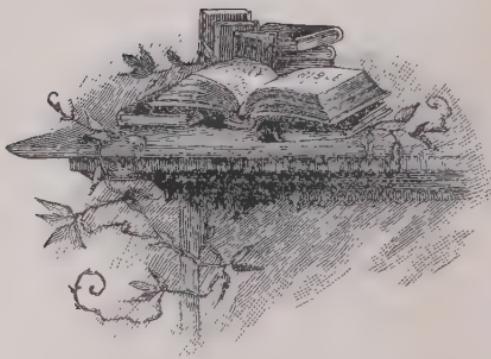
### CHAPTER V.—1776-7.

1. **Visit of George Rogers Clark.**—Where did he first appear in Kentucky? What did he become in Kentucky history? Where

was he born? And when? What was his first military service? What British offer did he decline?

2. **Clark's appearance and manners.**—Describe them? What impression did he make on men? Under whose authority was it thought he came? In what did he seem interested?
3. **Clark's jealousy of Transylvania Company.**—What course did he pursue toward it? What was his design? When was his second visit to Kentucky? Who was selected with him to visit the Assembly of Virginia?
4. **War supplies asked for.**—For what did Clark ask of the Virginia government? What did he say on refusal to grant the request? Was it granted? How was the powder shipped? What spies followed it? Where was it landed?
5. **Indians attack the convoy.**—Who went to convey the powder in? What happened to Todd's party? What did Clark do? What was the condition of the settlers in 1776?
6. **Three girls captured by Indians.**—Who were they? Where were they captured? How? What did the Indians do with them? What did Miss Callaway do?
7. **The pursuit and rescue.**—What party pursued? What were the relations of three of them to the maidens? By what route did they trail the Indians? Where did they overtake them? What did the pursuers do?
8. **An interval of quiet.**—What settlement was made near Frankfort in 1776? In Bourbon county? In Washington county? In Lincoln county? What stations did the Indians attack in July? What was the effect? What did Floyd write?
9. **Attack on McClelland's Fort.**—What of Colonel Patterson's journey? What befell McClelland's Fort? Who led the Indians? What resulted from the attack?
10. **First divine services.**—Who held the first at Boonesborough? Who at Harrodstown? What was the text of the latter? Where were these services held?
11. **Kentucky county organized.**—When was this done? Describe the boundaries? What advantage was this to her people?
12. **England instigates savage warfare.**—From what forts was this done? Did they long continue this? Who suffered from it?
13. **Attack near Harrodstown.**—Where was this made? Upon whom was it made? By how many Indians? What were the results? Who rallied to their rescue? What did these Indians do a few days after?

14. **General James Ray.**—What of his services? What of his fleetness of foot? What narrow escape did he make?
15. **Spies sent out.**—Who sent them? What were they ordered to do? What incident happened at Boonesborough? What did Kenton do?
16. **The fight before the fort.**—What did Boone do? Who saved Boone's life? How? What happened to the party under Boone? How did Kenton save his life the second time? What did Boone say?
17. **Dark days for Kentucky.**—Why could not Virginia aid Kentucky? What was the condition of the settlers in 1777? How many were in garrison at Boonesborough? At Harrodstown? At Logan's Fort?



## CHAPTER VI.

FROM THE FIRST SIEGE OF BOONESBOROUGH, 1777, TO THE  
CAPTURE OF FORT VINCENNES, 1779.

1. **Formidable siege of Boonesborough.**—On July 4, 1777, two hundred painted and armed warriors laid siege to Boonesborough, while detachments of others were deployed against Harrodstown and Logan's Fort to prevent re-enforcements being sent from these. For two days they boldly and vigorously attacked the garrison, but were defeated and baffled at every point, suffering heavy loss from the riflemen behind the wooden walls. In despair the savages withdrew and disappeared.

2. **Fighting at Logan's Fort.**—On the 20th of May before, one hundred Indians of this same body laid siege to St. Asaph's, or Logan's Fort. While the women were milking in the morning, and some men guarding, the savages fired on the latter from a cane-brake ambush. One man was killed and two wounded. There were but thirty-five in all in the fort, fifteen of whom were fighting men, now reduced to twelve. One of the wounded lay helpless between the fort and the Indians, his appeals for help being answered only by the cries of his frantic wife within. The heroic Logan, moved with sympathy and daring, boldly rushed forward from the opened gate into what seemed the jaws of death, lifted the wounded man in his herculean arms, and amid a shower of bullets from the foe, bore him safely to the arms of his distressed wife.

3. **The siege continues.**—The powder and ball of the garrison were nearly exhausted under the siege of days. It must be replenished or all would be lost. There was none to be had nearer than Holston, over a hundred miles away.

Logan with two picked men stole through the Indian lines, and set out over mountains and through forests to secure the needed relief, leaving but *nine guns* to defend themselves and the women and children. His resolute will made his trip successful, and the crisis was passed. At length the long siege of weeks was ended by the sudden appearance of Colonel Bowman, from Virginia, at the head of one hundred men. A few days before, a re-enforcement of forty-five men reached Boonesborough. These reliefs alarmed the Indians, who withdrew from the country.

**4. Clark's spies to Illinois.**—In April, Ben Linn and Samuel Moore were sent as spies to Illinois, in furtherance of the deep designs of Colonel Clark toward an aggressive move against the enemy. They embarked in a canoe or pirogue, upon the Cumberland river to its mouth, and entered the wilderness beyond, crossing the Ohio. The first court held in the new county convened at Harrodstown on September 2d. At this date a census of the town was taken, showing a population of eighty-five men, twenty-four women, seventy children and nineteen slaves; total, one hundred and ninety-eight. John Todd and Richard Callaway were elected the first members of the Virginia Assembly for Kentucky county, this year.

**5. Boone and the salt makers captured.**—In January, 1778, Boone led a party of thirty men to Blue Licks to make salt. A month after, while making the salt, the party were all captured except three, without firing a gun, under assurance to Boone by the Indians that all should be spared and well treated. The prisoners were carried North; Boone and ten of his men being conducted to the British at Detroit. The Indians kept their pledges. Under Boone's arts and skillful management he acquired much influence over the savages, whose admiration and fondness for their veteran enemy became remarkable. The three men who escaped

returned to the Lick, secreted the kettles, and brought the salt they had made safely to Boonesborough on pack-horses.

6. **Boone a pet of the Indians.**—The savages would not part with Boone, though several Englishmen offered to ransom him at a liberal price. His captors bore him back to Chillicothe, their tribal town, and there adopted him into the tribe under the usual ceremonies. He was taken into a principal family as a son. Before this adoption, the hairs of the head and beard were plucked out, except a small tuft on the crown, which was tied and dressed up with trinkets and feathers. This was done by women, who then led him to the river and gave him a thorough washing, "to take out all his white blood." He was then taken to the council-house, harangued by a chief, and his head and face painted in Indian style.

7. **Life among the Indians.**—Boone was wily enough to feign contentment, to adapt himself to the ways and humors of the savages, and to win their confidence. They soon allowed him to hunt, to engage in their sports and games, and to explore the woods. For months this life was continued with seeming content to both parties. Yet Boone's heart was with his kindred people, and he only watched and waited for the opportunity to serve their interests before attempting his escape.

8. **Boone's escape.**—In the summer of 1778, Boone was surprised at the sudden gathering of four hundred warriors, painted and armed to march on Boonesborough. He resolved at once to escape and bear the news to his people. This he safely did in a journey of one hundred and sixty miles, in five days, upon a single ration of venison which he had in his blanket, reaching Boonesborough June 20th. On account of Boone's escape, the Indians delayed their march for some weeks. In the meantime, Boone led a scout of twenty men across the Ohio to the Scioto. While reconnoi-

tering, Kenton, in advance, saw two Indians in great glee galloping a pony, one facing the horse's tail. As they came in range, he fired and shot both, and ended their sport. About thirty Indians suddenly dashed from the woods at Kenton, who dodged from tree to tree, until Boone's party came up and drove them off.

**9. Formidable attack and siege.**—Learning that the Indian army was on the march, Boone hastened back to the fort and prepared for defense. The next day over four hundred Indians, led by Captain Duquesne, of the English army, and several chiefs, the British flag flying, invested Boonesborough. The garrison of the fort numbered but fifty men. Duquesne sent in a summons to surrender. The answer was prompt: "We will defend the fort as long as there is a man of us alive." The enemy then requested a parley with nine of the principal men of the garrison, sacredly pledging them safety if they would come out. They agreed to meet the Indian chiefs at a point sixty yards from the fort gate.

**10. Strategy and failure.**—It was proposed to release the garrison without injury, if they would swear allegiance to the king of England. After the parley was over, the Indians said it was their custom on such occasions, for two Indians to take each white man by the hand in friendly token of parting. The nine whites permitted this; but on the alert, and suspicious, they suddenly broke away and dashed forward for the fort under a heavy fire from the treacherous savages. Only a few were wounded. The siege and battle now began in earnest, and waged for nine days. The enemy attempted to mine under the fort from the river bank. The garrison started a countermine, when the enemy abandoned theirs. All attacks and strategy failing, Duquesne drew off his forces and abandoned the siege. The loss of the Indians was heavy in killed and wounded,

as they were exposed to the fire of the veteran riflemen from the fort. That of the whites was but three or four men in all.

11. **Clark's plans developed.**—We have noted the fact of sending spies to Illinois by General George Rogers Clark. They returned with all the information needed. Clark at once went to Virginia and arranged with Governor Patrick Henry for aid and supplies for a campaign against the



THE FIRST STOCKADE CABINS AT FALLS OF OHIO (LOUISVILLE), BUILT BY  
GENERAL GEORGE ROGERS CLARK, IN 1778.

British and Indians in the North-west. Late in the spring of 1778, his little fleet of flats and pirogues, well loaded, descended the Ohio from Pittsburgh and landed on Corn Island, Falls of Ohio, May 27, 1778, where were built some cabin forts. This was the first improvement made at the present site of Louisville. Joined by volunteers from Kentucky, Clark left the women and children with a guard of men, and embarked with one hundred and thirty-five soldiers down the Ohio.

12. **Marches on Kaskaskia.**—General Clark landed his little army at old Fort Massac, nearly opposite Paducah, and began his march across the woods and prairies of Illinois.

Kaskaskia was a British fort on the Mississippi, opposite St. Louis, and under command of M. Rocheblave, with a garrison of British soldiers. The people of the town were mainly French, as this country, with Canada, had been surrendered by France to Great Britain by the treaty of Paris in 1763. Without suspicion of danger, the fort was not well guarded. General Clark, with cautious strategy, invested the place with complete surprise and captured the garrison and town without the loss of a man.

**13. Capture of Cahokia.**—Cahokia was another fortified British post, sixty miles north of Kaskaskia. Major Bowman was sent by General Clark, at the head of a body of troops, to surprise and capture this place also, before they could learn the startling intelligence of an American army in the country and of the capture of Kaskaskia. Cahokia shared a like fate, and was taken without loss. Thus, by the bold sagacity and tact of General Clark, these frontier outposts fell under the authority of the Americans, and hence was lost to England all the territory now known as Illinois. There was yet one important post occupied by the British which menaced Kentucky and threatened continued savage warfare through its influence on the Indian tribes around. This was Vincennes, on the Wabash river.

**14. Vincennes captured.**—General Clark was alive to the imperative need of seizing and holding this latter post. The population of Vincennes was also French, who yet bore latent prejudices against their old enemy, the English. They had just heard of the treaty of alliance by which France pledged to aid the Americans in the war of the Revolution with her army and navy. The sympathy and friendship of these French people, who had been under English rule at Kaskaskia and Vincennes, turned at once in favor of Clark and his Kentuckians. Taking advantage of this when the British garrison was very weak, by strategy

and by enlisting the aid of the French citizens, he induced the surrender of Vincennes and put the fort in charge of Captain Helm.

15. **An immense territory conquered.**—Thus was won to the authority of Virginia by the aid of her Kentucky children all that immense and valuable territory embracing the States of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan and Wisconsin, from the Ohio river to the Lakes. Otherwise, this empire of land, being held like Canada, under British rule, would have been given up to England in the treaty of peace at the close of the Revolutionary war, and thus restricted the future power and extent of the United States.

16. **The bearings on Kentucky.**—This conquest of the North-west was of great importance. The capture of these important outposts, and the change from British rule, had a decided effect upon the Indian tribes of this whole country. It was now, for the first time, an easy matter for General Clark to stipulate terms of treaty and peace with the savages, and thus to check for the time those border hostilities which were so injurious to the peace and prosperity of Kentucky. Indeed, the Indians now sought to treat with the successful general for peace upon terms of his own dictation. From this time to the end of the Revolutionary war, the advantages of this remarkable campaign were felt among the settlers of the entire western border.

17. **Vincennes lost and captured again.**—Clark could spare but a few men to garrison Vincennes. Colonel Hamilton, learning this weakness, came down from Detroit with a British force and recaptured the fort. General Clark, feeling the necessity of its possession, organized a force of nearly two hundred men at Kaskaskia, in the winter of 1778-9. On the seventh of February, he set out upon a march against Vincennes, through the swampy prairies and overflowed valleys, inundated by recent heavy rains. Through

the cold and storms from above and the widespread waters beneath, the heroic band was led forward to what seemed an impossible task. Wading the flat prairies, sometimes two feet deep in water, and sometimes covered with thin ice, plunging into the overflowed valleys with the water rising to their waists and arm-pits, and crossing the swollen creeks and rivers upon rafts of logs, they found themselves finally in near vicinity to Vincennes. Colonel Hamilton and his garrison little dreamed of an enemy so near, until Fort Vincennes was invested. Clark laid siege for two days, so disposing and marching his men as to make them appear a much larger force than it was; his riflemen, in the meanwhile, picking off the garrison wherever one became visible. After two days' siege the British commander surrendered, and Clark became master of the situation again.

---

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

---

### CHAPTER VI.—1777-9.

1. **Formidable siege of Boonesborough.**—What happened to Boonesborough July 4, 1777? What at Harrodstown and Logan's Fort? How long did the siege last? What were the results to the Indians?
2. **Fighting at Logan's Fort.**—What happened to Logan's Fort in May? What were the women doing? How many men were in the fort? What gallant act did Logan perform?
3. **The siege continues.**—What danger threatened the garrison? What did Logan do? Was he successful? How were the Indians driven off? What help came to Boonesborough? What did the Indians do?
4. **Clark's spies to Illinois.**—Who were they? Why were they sent? How did they go? When and where was the first court in the new county? What population had Harrodstown now? Who were first elected members of the Virginia Assembly?

5. **Boone and the salt makers captured.**—What party went to make salt? When and where? What happened to them? Did any escape? What was done with the prisoners? How did the Indians treat them? What did the three do who escaped?
6. **Boone a pet of the Indians.**—How did the Indians treat Boone? Where did they take him from Detroit? What did they do with him at Chillicothe? What were the ceremonies of adoption? Who performed them? What was done last?
7. **Life among the Indians.**—How did Boone act as an Indian? What liberties were allowed to him? How long did this last? What was Boone's concealed wish?
8. **Boone's escape.**—What alarmed Boone in the summer? What did he resolve to do? What journey did he make? What effect on the Indians had his escape? What scout did Boone make? What incident of Kenton?
9. **Formidable attack and siege.**—What did Boone learn? What did he do? What happened next day to the fort? How many were in garrison? What reply was given to the summons to surrender? What did the enemy then do? What was agreed to?
10. **Strategy and failure.**—What did the enemy propose? How did they offer to greet the nine whites? How did the whites escape? How did the savages then act? How did they attempt to reach the fort? How were they met? How long did the siege last? What were the final results?
11. **Clark's plans developed.**—What report from the Illinois spies? What did Clark then do? From whence did his party embark? When did they land on Corn Island? What was done here? With how many men did he leave Corn Island?
12. **Marches on Kaskaskia.**—Where did he land in Illinois? On what British post did he march? What was the result? Of what nation were the Kaskaskians?
13. **Capture of Cahokia.**—How far off was this fort? Who was sent to capture it? What success had Bowman? What were the results of these conquests? What other post did Clark plan to capture?
14. **Vincennes captured.**—What were the prejudices of the people of Vincennes? What new treaty inclined these people to favor the Kentuckians? Who aided Clark in his designs on Vincennes? Was this post captured?

15. **An immense territory conquered.**—What great territory was won to Virginia by capturing these three forts? What would have otherwise become of it? What bearing did it have upon the future of the United States?
16. **The bearings on Kentucky.**—How did these conquests relieve Kentucky? What did Clark now effect with the Indians? How long did these advantages last?
17. **Vincennes lost and captured again.**—Why was Vincennes recaptured by the British? Under whose lead? What did Clark do on learning the fact? When did he march on Vincennes? What were the difficulties of the campaign? How did his men bear them? Did they reach Vincennes? How did he find the garrison? What strategy did Clark employ? What was the final result?



## CHAPTER VII.—1778-80.

FROM THE FIRST IMPROVEMENTS AT LOUISVILLE, 1778, TO THE  
“HARD WINTER,” 1779-80.

**1. Improvements at Louisville.**—As the term of enlistment of some of Clark's soldiers at Kaskaskia had expired, such as wished to return to Kentucky were put in charge of Captain Linn, with orders from Colonel Clark to strengthen the works of defense at Falls of Ohio. The improvements on Corn Island were abandoned, and a new stockade fort and cabins built, under Linn's direction, on the river shore at the foot of the present Twelfth street. Here, on Friday, December 25, 1778, the first Christmas dinner and the first Christmas festivities that were ever partaken of on the site of Louisville were enjoyed in the cabin of Richard Chenoweth.

**2. Fort Nelson built.**—In 1782, a larger and stronger fort was built by troops of the regular army, near the location of Seventh street, on the north side of Main, and called Fort Nelson. It occupied one acre of ground, and was surrounded by a ditch eight feet deep and ten feet wide, with a row of sharp pickets in the middle. In 1832, in digging the cellar of Love's store, on Main street opposite the Louisville Hotel, some of the remains of this fort were dug up. Louisville was named for the French King, Louis XVI., who aided the Americans in the war for independence.

**3. A corn-shelling party attacked.**—Thirty men went out from Harrodstown seven miles distant, to shell and bring in some corn to the fort. While engaged thus they were fired on by forty Indians, ambushed in a canebrake near, and seven killed and wounded. Colonel Bowman in command rallied the men and drove back the Indians, dispatching to Harrodstown for re-inforcements. On the arrival of these, the

enemy were put to flight. Other raids and encounters with the Indians occurred this year at Harrodstown, at Danville, near Georgetown, and in other sections.

4. **Adventure of Simon Kenton.**—In the latter part of 1778, the restless spirit of Kenton led him to join a party to cross the Ohio and make reprisals for horses stolen by the Indians. In a sharp skirmish with a body of savages his companions were killed or dispersed, and himself captured. The hatred by the Indians of their veteran foe was intense, and they were now bent on vengeance. They began beating him without mercy, and upbraiding him as a "*hoss steal.*"

5. **Kenton's tortures.**—They might have murdered him there, but thought it best to defer until they could accomplish this with slow and terrible tortures, in the presence of the whole tribe. To secure him for the night, they laid him on his back, lashed his feet to two saplings, tied his hands at the ends of a pole stretched across his breast, and fastened his arms to the same. They then stretched back his head and tied him by his neck to a stake in the ground. Thus, in misery, he passed the night. The next morning they painted him black, a token of assurance that he would be burned at the stake. On the way to Chillicothe they bound him on an unbroken horse, and turned the latter loose to run wildly through the bushes and trees.

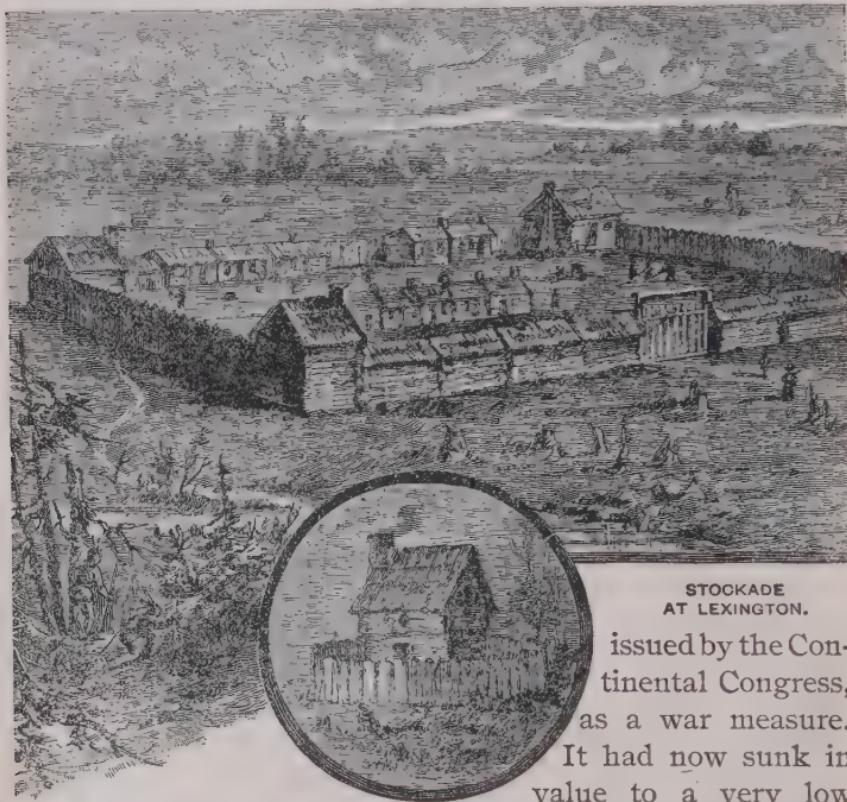
6. **End of his captivity.**—Arriving at Chillicothe, they compelled him to run the gauntlet under the clubs and switches of six hundred Indians placed in two opposite rows. Then they tied him to the stake for twenty-four hours, but did not apply the torch. Thus for weeks was he tormented, running the gauntlet eight times, led to the stake three times, and treated with every other horrible cruelty. He was at length moved to Sandusky, and was here saved from death by his old Pittsburgh friend, Simon Girty, now a renegade to the Indians. He was next carried to Detroit, where he

finally escaped through the aid of a Mrs. Harvey, who had conceived quite an interest in his fate.

**7. Colonel John Bowman's defeat.**—After the planting of their crops, in the spring of 1779, under command of Colonel John Bowman, the settlers were ordered to gather at the mouth of the Licking in May, for a march against Chillicothe. The divisions were under Captains Logan, Harrod, Holder, Bulger and Levi Todd—Logan being second in command. They reached and invested Chillicothe without alarm to the enemy. At an early hour in the night the attack was planned for daylight next morning. A part of the command, under Colonel Logan in position, awaited the signal of assault from Colonel Bowman. By some miscarriage, no signal was given those waiting. The Indians were apprised of the enemy's presence by the barking of a dog, and soon became conscious of the ominous danger.

**8. The attack by Logan.**—The firing of a gun in the distance prompted Logan to attack at once. He led his division to the assault, and was driving the enemy before him, confident that comrades were supporting from the other side. In the very face of success, he was dismayed to receive an order from Colonel Bowman to retreat. Such an order he was compelled to obey. The Indians, surprised and encouraged by such a turn in affairs, sallied out in pursuit. Logan's men fell slowly back on Bowman's force. The Indians now attacked from all sides, and great confusion followed the unexpected tactics of the commander. By the coolness and bravery of Logan, the troops were rallied and the enemy repelled. This was repeated several times, until a panic was threatened. At this crisis, Logan with several brave leaders, charged the Indians on horseback, drove them from their covers, and checked their assault. Their chiefs in command, Blackfish and Red Hawk, having been slain here, the fight ended, with heaviest loss to the Indians.

9. The currency and the lands.—Of gold and silver, there was little to circulate. The currency in use was the paper



STOCKADE  
AT LEXINGTON.

issued by the Continental Congress, as a war measure.

It had now sunk in value to a very low

rate, and promised to become worthless. Virginia turned to her lands to replenish her treasures, and enacted the Land Law, of May, 1779, with provisions that made her Kentucky lands available. This attracted many settlers from the old colonies, driven out by the contending armies of the Revolutionary war. The tide of immigration was greater than ever known before. In the spring of 1780, three hundred large family boats arrived at Louisville, and, daily, trains of wagons went out from there to interior settlements.

10. The hard winter.—The winter of 1779-80 was unprecedented in severity. The rivers were frozen over, and all navigation suspended for three months. The price of corn ranged from fifty dollars per bushel in December, to one hundred and sixty-five, in January; and thirty dollars in May, in Continental money.

11. Settlement of Lexington.—In April, 1779, Lexington was first permanently improved and stockade cabins built. These extended from Levy's old corner to Masterson's, on Main street. Out of this little plant grew the beautiful city of the Bluegrass center, under the enterprise of Colonel Robert Patterson and comrades. In this year also, Bryan's station, five miles north-east of Lexington, was established. Martin's station and Hinkson's, north of Paris, were then restored; Pittman's station near Greensburg, and Squire Boone's, in Shelby county, were likewise added. >



COLONEL ROBERT PATTERSON.  
A BRAVE PIONEER, THE FOUNDER OF LEXINGTON,  
KY., AND AFTERWARD OF LOSANTIVILLE,  
NOW CINCINNATI, OHIO.

12. McAfee's station.—The McAfee brothers now returned to, and fortified, their old survey on Salt river. The young peach trees, which they had planted four years previously, bloomed in the spring, and bore them a bounteous crop. They were subjected to Indian raids at times, in one of which McCoun, a promising lad, was captured, carried off, and burned at the stake.

13. **Massacre on the Ohio.**—Colonel David Rogers and Captain Robert Benham in charge of two keel boats loaded with military stores, manned by one hundred men, were attacked by a large body of Indians, near the mouth of the Little Miami river. The savages were on land and in boats. Colonel Rogers ordered his men to land, that he might meet the enemy at a better advantage. He was suddenly surrounded by five times his number, and cut to pieces; not more than nine or ten escaped. Among the latter was Captain Benham, though badly wounded through the hips. By the friendly concealment of a fallen tree, he lay, after the enemy had disappeared, for two days. Falling in with a wounded comrade, they managed to survive in the woods for weeks. One was wounded in the lower limbs, and the other in both arms. The latter would stroll out in the woods and drive the turkeys, deer and other game within range, when the former would shoot them from his covert. Thus, the two arms of one man, and the two feet of another, were used to mutually sustain the lives of two men, who otherwise must have perished. They were finally rescued.

---

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

---

### CHAPTER VII.—1778-80.

1. **Improvements at Louisville.**—Whom did Clark send back to Louisville? With what orders? What changes did Linn make at Louisville? When was the first Christmas dinner in Louisville? In whose cabin?
2. **Fort Nelson built.**—When? By whom? Near what streets? What was its area? What defenses were constructed around it? What was found there in 1832? For whom was Louisville named?
3. **The corn-shelling party attacked.**—How many were of this party? Whither did they go? How were they attacked? Who

rallied the men? What was the final result? Where were other Indian raids this year?

4. **Adventure of Simon Kenton.**—Into what adventure was Kenton led in 1778? What happened in an attack of the Indians? How did they treat him as a captive? What did they call him?
5. **Kenton's tortures.**—Why did not his captors put him to death at once? How was he confined at night? What did the Indians do to him next morning? What on the way to Chillicothe?
6. **End of his captivity.**—What punishment did they inflict at Chillicothe? What did they next threaten to do? How often were these cruelties inflicted? Where was he next carried? Who saved him here from the stake? Where was he finally carried? What became of him then?
7. **Colonel John Bowman's defeat.**—What order did Colonel Bowman give in 1779? Who commanded under him? What Indian town did they march upon? Was the plan of attack successful? Why not?
8. **The attack by Logan.**—What did Logan do on the failure of assault? What order checked him? What effect had Logan's retreat on the Indians? What did the savages do? What was the effect of the fighting? How was the army saved from disaster? What Indian chiefs were slain?
9. **The currency and the lands.**—What of gold and silver? What of the paper money? What resource for money did Virginia find? What effect had the land law of 1779 on immigrants? How many came out to Louisville in 1780?
10. **The hard winter.**—When was it? What were its effects on navigation? What were the prices of corn in Continental money?
11. **Settlement of Lexington.**—When was it? What improvements were first made? Under whose lead were they made? What other station near Lexington was built? What of Martin's and Hinkson's? Of Pittman's? Of Squire Boone's?
12. **McAfee's station.**—What of the McAfee brothers this year? How did they find their young peach trees? What happened to McCoun at this station?
13. **Massacre on the Ohio.**—How many men were in this massacre? Who led them? How did it occur? At what river point? What were the results of the disaster? What happened to Captain Benham? How was his life saved?

## CHAPTER VIII.—1780-81.

FROM THE CONSTRUCTION OF FORT JEFFERSON TO THE LARGE  
MIGRATION OF FEMALES TO KENTUCKY, 1780-1781.

1. **Fort Jefferson** built.—Thomas Jefferson, Governor of Virginia, sent orders to General Clark to fortify a post on the Mississippi, to command the country above and below. Clark proceeded, with two hundred soldiers, to occupy a point called the Iron Banks, five miles below the Ohio, and to erect a fort of several block-houses, which he called Fort Jefferson. This fort was manned with artillery and small arms. It was well known that France and Spain opposed the extension of the Virginia boundary to the Mississippi river, and any control of the navigation of the Mississippi. Already their intrigues had begun to effect their jealous aims and policy. Of these we shall speak hereafter.

2. **The Chickasaw war.**—The Chickasaw nation held title to all the land between the Tennessee and Mississippi rivers, and protested against Clark's invading their territory and building a fort thereon. Under their chief, Colbert, they began a siege and attack, several hundred strong, upon the fort in 1781. The garrison of thirty men gallantly defended, inflicting heavy slaughter upon the enemy. At the end of five days Clark brought in a relief force, and the siege was abandoned. A treaty with the Chickasaws soon after adjusted all differences. ↴

3. **Formidable invasion in 1780.**—The British, in retaliation for Clark's successes in the North-west, equipped and sent a formidable force of six hundred Canadians and Indians under Colonel Byrd, of the English army, with several pieces of artillery, to invade and desolate Kentucky. This army came down the Miami and up Licking river, on boats,

to a point where Falmouth now stands. Colonel Byrd thence marched on Ruddle's and Martin's stations, both of which fell an easy prey, under threats of cannonading and assaults. The garrisons were promised the protection of the English, in the parley ; but the superior numbers of the savages led them, when the gates were opened, to rush in, and any warrior to seize a man, woman or child, as he might please, for massacre, torture or captivity.

4. **Barbarities practiced.**—The crudest atrocities were now visited upon the unfortunate prisoners, and neither age nor sex was spared. The helpless agonies of men, the distracted throes of wives and mothers, and the piteous cries of children, torn asunder and brutally outraged in every possible way, were the scenes enacted before the eyes of the commanding colonel. He was moved with compassion, but was unable to restrain the barbarians with his few Canadian allies. Each Indian captor refused to give up his captive, if he had spared the life of the same. So elated were the Indians by this success, that they demanded to march on Bryan's station, Lexington, and others, and assault and capture these in turn. Colonel Byrd stubbornly refused to go further, and at once returned across the Ohio river. He gave plausible reasons for this course ; but he was, in truth, so shocked at the savage treatment of prisoners, that he resolved no more should fall into their hands.

5. **General Clark retaliates.**—Clark now hastened from Vincennes to Louisville, with intent to strike a heavy blow against the enemy, in revenge for the capture of Ruddle's and Martin's stations. One thousand men were promptly gotten ready at the mouth of Licking, and on the site of Cincinnati, opposite. The Indian towns of Chillicothe, Pickaway, and others, on the Scioto and Miami rivers, were captured and burned, and the fields of grain and Indian property adjacent were destroyed, leaving them without

homes or food supplies for the winter. Some were killed and captured, but the great masses fled in advance of Clark's army. The effect was such that no great body of Indians entered Kentucky for two years after.

6. **Incidents of 1780.**—Many incidents and adventures, of which we have not space here to relate, occurred this year, from marauding bands of Indians dispersed throughout the country. The first settlements in Hardin county were made late in 1780, on the site of Elizabethtown and in its neighborhood. Stations were also built in Logan county, at Mauldings, at Russellville, and on Whippoorwill creek. This country was then almost a perfect prairie. In November, the Virginia Assembly divided Kentucky into three counties—Jefferson, Fayette, and Lincoln. Stephen Trigg and John Todd were elected members of the Legislature of Virginia, called the House of Burgesses then.

7. **General Clark's naval defense.**—General Clark adopted the novel plan of a naval defense against the Indians, by manning and arming a row-galley boat with breastworks on the sides, to patrol the Ohio river from Louisville to Licking river. For a time this seemed to dismay the Indians, but the backwoodsmen objected so strongly to the naval service, that this expedient was given up. The Indians afterward borrowed the idea, and gave great trouble and loss to the whites boating on the Ohio.

8. **Adventures of Clark.**—General Clark, Harlan, and Consilla left Fort Jefferson on the Mississippi for Harrodstown, three hundred miles on foot. Their journey was through the Chickasaw territory, and perilous. They painted and decked themselves like Indians. On reaching the Tennessee river the Indians on both shores discovered them, and pursued with war-whoops. They escaped through the forest growth until nightfall, tied up a log raft with grape vines, crossed over and pursued their journey. Once or twice they narrowly escaped being shot for Indians, until

they changed their disguise. They met a party of forty immigrants on Red river, Logan county, almost starved in the midst of abundant game, because they knew not the hunter's art of shooting buffalo. Clark and his companions, mounting horses, dashed upon a herd and killed fourteen before the chase ended. The immigrants, learning the vital spot at which to aim, had no farther trouble in killing buffalo. This country was prairie then.

9. **Designs on Detroit.**—Clark reached Harrodstown safely. He at once employed every art and force of avail to his masterly genius, to revive and carry out his cherished purpose of capturing Detroit. In December, 1780, in person he visited and urged the Governor of Virginia to aid him in equipping and supporting five hundred men to carry out his design. This aid was promised, but postponed on account of the invasion of a large British force into the heart of Virginia. When resumed, another disaster came to baffle and divert the main plans of the general.

10. **Massacre of Loughrey's men.**—Colonel Archie Loughrey embarked one hundred and twenty Pennsylvania recruits at Fort Henry, now Wheeling, to join Clark at Louisville, in the campaign against Detroit. A large force of Indians collected below the mouth of Little Miami river, to intercept and destroy Loughrey, if possible, at a point opposite Belleview landing, Kentucky, and some miles below Aurora. A part of Loughrey's men landed on the Kentucky shore. They were here suddenly assailed from ambush. A large body of savages now attacking from the Indiana shore also, by the advantage of the shallow water, the fight became a massacre, until nearly half of the entire force was killed, Loughrey among the number. The remainder surrendered and were carried into captivity by the barbarians. This was a heavy loss in men, arms, and supplies to General Clark. This final defeat of his designs on Detroit was probably planned and directed by the British officer in command there.

11. **Petty hostilities continued.**—The stations on Beargrass, and around Squire Boone's on Clear creek, were often harassed by raiding bands of Indians crossing at the Falls of Ohio. Several valuable lives were lost. Captain Whittaker, with fifteen men, trailed one of these bands to the foot of the Falls. Pursuing in canoes, as he supposed, the Indians from ambush fired on his party from the Kentucky shore, killing and wounding nine. Captain Whittaker landed again, attacked the savages with a fierce vengeance and routed them, with a loss of over twenty of their number. For safety to their families, Squire Boone and neighbors abandoned their stations near the site of Shelbyville, to remove all to the stronger forts on Beargrass. On the route, near Long Run, the Indians assaulted the moving party, killing and wounding a number before they were driven off.

12. **Floyd's defeat.**—Hearing of the disaster, Colonel Floyd collected about thirty men and pursued the savages. He soon fell into an ambuscade of Indians, overpowering in numbers, whose galling fire, though bravely returned, compelled his retreat. During 1781 over one hundred lives were sacrificed to savage cruelty, within thirty miles of Louisville. Massacres and outrages were perpetrated at Crab Orchard, in the vicinity of Bryan's station, at McAfee's station, around the settlements in Hardin county, and in many other places too numerous for mention in the details of this work.

13. **Importation of females.**—Prior to 1781, in the immigration to Kentucky, the number of males was far in excess of that of females. Many men had built their cabins and laid the foundations of homes and fortunes, who needed the presence and companionship of the gentler sex to enhance their comfort and content. So manifest was this natural desire to add to the social element a greater number of females, that organized efforts were made to induce a large

immigration of women. For two or three years after 1780, large accessions of female colonists continued to supply the social and domestic wants of the country.

**14. Primitive habits and customs.**—The habits and customs of our pioneer ancestors were very simple, free and independent, which gave a charm to life not often enjoyed in the present day of fashion and form. A log cabin was their lot, and with it they were content. The young husband and wife were helpmates for each other, and lived and loved together, sharing alike their joys and burdens. What cared they if the meal was grated on a board or pounded in a mortar, so there was plenty of it? The men cleared the woods, planted the fields and gardens, chopped and hauled the wood, boiled down the sugar and syrup at the maple camps, and did all rough work, while the women cooked, spun and wove, milked the cows, and did the house-work with cheerful happiness. The worries of complex changes which came with our civilization, they were free from. Posterity will be happier when it learns to simplify life again to its natural conditions and wants.

---

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

---

### CHAPTER VIII.—1780-81.

- 1. Fort Jefferson built.**—What order came from Governor Jefferson? What did Clark name this fort? What nations desired to control the Mississippi river?
- 2. Chickasaw war.**—What Indian nation owned the site of this fort? How did they regard Clark's intrusion? Who was their chief? What did they do? How many garrisoned the fort? What was the result of the fighting? How was the trouble settled? In what year was this?
- 3. Formidable invasion in 1780.**—By whom was it made? Under whose command? What new implement of war was used?

Where did Byrd invade Kentucky? What stations did he capture? How did the Indians treat the prisoners?

4. **Barbarities practiced.**—What were these? What effect had they on Colonel Byrd? Why did he not prevent the atrocities? What did the Indians demand? What did Byrd answer? What did he finally do?
5. **General Clark retaliates.**—What steps were taken now by Clark? Where did he lead the army? What were the results of the campaign? How long did it check the savages?
6. **Incidents of 1780.**—What of them? What stations were built in 1780? What of the country around Logan county then? How was Kentucky county next divided? Who were elected legislators?
7. **General Clark's naval defense.**—What was this device? Where was this boat used? Why was its use not continued? What did the Indians do afterward?
8. **Adventures of Clark.**—What was the first? How did they travel? How did they cross the Tennessee river? What white party did they meet? How did Clark and his comrades relieve them?
9. **Designs on Detroit.**—Of whom did Clark ask aid? When? Was it promised? Why was it not sent then?
10. **Massacre of Loughrey's men.**—How many were there? Where did they embark? For what purpose? How were Loughrey's men attacked? At what point? What followed the attack? How did this affect Clark's plans?
11. **Petty hostilities continued.**—At what stations? What incident of Captain Whittaker's gallantry at Falls of Ohio have we? What was Squire Boone forced to do? Where did the savages attack the movers?
12. **Floyd's defeat.**—What did Colonel Floyd do on hearing of this disaster? What befell his party? How many were slain near Louisville in 1781, by the savages? At what other points did the Indians attack?
13. **Importation of females.**—What of the wants of male settlers to 1781? What was done to remedy this? What success followed the efforts?
14. **Primitive habits and customs.**—What was the character of these? What houses had they to live in? What did the men do? What, the women? What of this simple pioneer life?

## CHAPTER IX.—1781-2.

FROM THE BATTLE OF LITTLE MOUNTAIN (MOUNT STERLING) TO CLARK'S CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE SCIOTO TOWNS.

1. **Needs and supplies of the backwoodsmen.**—The skins of the deer, the bear and the buffalo were invaluable ; the former for the hunting shirt, the leggings and the moccasins ; while the latter furnished both bed and covering for the night. Thongs were cut and ropes were made from hides. Gourds for dipping and drinking water, and larger ones for storing articles, were in universal use. The tables and the stools were made of slabs set on wooden legs. The bed of stuffed feathers or straw was laid on slabs, resting on poles supported by upright pieces at one end, and the other end let in between the logs of the cabin. The baby was not forgotten, but was rocked to sleep in a sugar-trough cradle. The food was rich milk and butter, the juiciest of beef and pork, and the wild meats of the buffalo, bear, deer, turkey and smaller game. Added to flour, corn meal and hominy, roasting ears, pumpkins, potatoes and beans were plentiful. The orchards, now bearing rich fruits, supplemented the nuts of the hickory and walnut trees, the wild grapes and plums, and the luscious pawpaw, the banana of Kentucky.

2. **Civil events in 1781-82.**—In 1781, a Virginia law fixed the value of continental money at one thousand dollars in paper for one in silver or gold. It was made lawful to receive this money for taxes ; and for public lands at five hundred dollars per hundred acres, which was only fifty cents in specie. The country was flooded with land warrants, and out of this came the confusion and distress over land titles in after years. The first court organized in Lin-

coln county was at Harrodstown, January 16, 1781. "Thirteen gentlemen" were commissioned justices of the peace to hold the county court. Two were slain by the Indians before their commissions reached them, and three more fell victims the next year.

3. **Disasters of 1782.**—The annals show that the year 1782 was eventful in defeats and disasters to the pioneers of Kentucky. On March 19, 1782, Indian signs were discovered in the vicinity of Boonesborough, and around Estill's station, fifteen miles south of this place. Captain James Estill collected twenty-five men and started out to find the trail of the marauders. In his absence the Indians doubled in his rear, and suddenly appeared at daylight, on the 20th, before Estill's station. They killed and scalped Miss Jennie Gass, who was milking the cows, in sight of her mother, whose agonizing cries they mocked with derision. They captured Monk, a faithful slave of Captain Estill, who assured them that there were forty men in the fort, molding bullets and waiting for the Indians. There were really but four invalid men, beside the women and children. This ruse of Monk's saved all from a bloody massacre.

4. **Alarm and pursuit.**—The Indians retreated across the Kentucky river. Two boys, Samuel South and Peter Hackett, were sent from the station upon the trail of Captain Estill, with news of what had occurred. They found the party on the Kentucky below the mouth of Red river. Captain Estill gave immediate pursuit, and on the 22d, at Little Mountain, just opposite the site of Mt. Sterling, came up with the Indians. They proved to be the Wyandottes, twenty-five in number—the same with the whites.

5. **Battle of Little Mountain.**—Though the Indians took advantage in position, and were a band of picked warriors, Captain Estill led his men to the attack, with the rallying order, "*Every man to his man, and every man to his tree.*"

Thus was begun and fought, almost man to man, by skilled veterans on both sides, one of the bloodiest and most desperate battles of record in history. The Indian chief fell mortally wounded at the first fire, but, Spartan like, he bravely rallied his dismayed warriors, and gave the orders of battle to the end. The combatants fought at the distance of fifty yards. Five of Estill's men were left to guard the horses in the rear, but retreated. Thirteen others lay dead or wounded upon the field.

6. **Estill's heroic death.**—Estill was covered with blood from wounds received. Grappling with a powerful savage in personal and doubtful conflict, a broken arm of Estill gave his enemy the advantage to draw his knife and bury it in the heart of the heroic pioneer. Almost at the same instant, Rev. Joseph Proctor, a Methodist minister, who had performed many deeds of valor on the field, shot the slayer dead over the body of his victim. Thus ended this memorable battle, with but four men unhurt to bear off the wounded in retreat. It was told by the Indians after, that but one Wyandotte warrior returned unharmed from the contest. Among the incidents of the battle, Proctor, coming to his rescue, saved



MONUMENT.

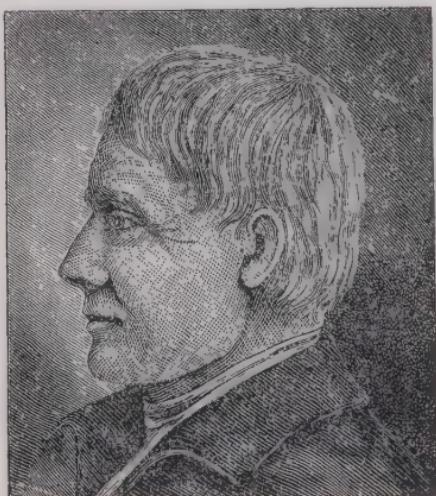
ERECTED TO THE MEMORY OF  
CAPTAIN JAMES ESTILL,  
NEAR RICHMOND, KY.

the life of Colonel William Irvine, who was badly wounded. Proctor and Irvine held the pursuing Indians under cover with their rifles until the wounded man could mount his horse and retreat to a place of concealment. The negro

slave, Monk, was still held by his captors, at the onset of the fight. In the midst and confusion of battle, his voice was heard to ring out through the forest, "Don't give way, Massa Jim; you can whip the redskins?" At the close Monk escaped, and helped his old friends to bear off the wounded. He lived affectionately honored in the Estill family, and died at a venerable age.

7. Adventure of Captain John Holder.—About August 10th, a scout of Indians raided near Hoy's station, five miles south of Richmond, captured two boys, and recrossed the

Kentucky river. Captain John Holder pursued with a hasty party of seventeen men, and came up with the savages at Upper Blue Licks. A skirmishing fight ensued, with a loss of several on each side. Captain Holder then discreetly withdrew his little force, fearing a flank movement to his rear. The Indians did not follow him or his party.



COLONEL WILLIAM IRVINE,  
A PIONEER SETTLER OF MADISON COUNTY.

8. Siege of Bryan's Station.—On the night of

August 4, 1782, Bryan's Station was invested by an Indian army of over five hundred warriors, under the lead of the noted white renegade, Simon Girty. Years before, Girty, in revenge for some real or imagined injury from those of his own race and blood, had renounced all allegiance to civilized society, taken refuge among the Indians, and become adopted into one of their tribes. His hatred toward the whites was as intense as that of his redskin brethren, if not more so. His bold, fertile and superior mind gave him the power and

prestige of leadership among the ruder savages. Some unusual atrocities on the part of the Indians, and merciless retaliations on the part of the border men, inflamed the Shawanees and adjacent tribes, and enabled Girty to unite their warriors for this formidable invasion of Kentucky. The Cherokees, Wyandottes, Pottowattomies and the Miami tribe joined in this confederation.

**9. The Kentuckians taken by surprise.**—The descent of Girty's army took the Kentuckians by surprise. They came by Byrd's route to Falmouth; thence by Stoner's, Cooper's Run and North Elkhorn, to the point of attack. Not one within the fort knew of the enemy's presence until it was surrounded by nearly six hundred Indians. By rare good fortune, sixty veteran riflemen were in garrison, and every man ready for battle. They had been collected in, and were equipped to join other volunteers in pursuit of the Indians now raiding the country. Girty came at midnight, and while all was preparation within to start at next dawn of day. Rations were being cooked, bullets were moulded, and rifles put in order. Day-dawn came on, the gates were opened, and the pioneers started forth, to the surprise of Girty's army. The latter met them with a heavy fire, to the surprise of the Kentuckians. The latter sheltered instantly within their defenses, and all hope of advantage was lost by the Indian army. There was now no alternative left but assault and desperate fighting.

**10. Siege and re-enforcements.**—Messengers stole through the Indian lines at night and bore the news to Lexington, Boonesborough, Harrodstown and Logan's Fort. By night-fall the country was aflame with excitement, and re-enforcements rallied from every point. Boone, Trigg, Harlan, McBride, McGary, Todd and others were, a few hours after, on their way to rescue, with their clans of riflemen. In the meantime the siege went on. By a rare oversight the fort

was built with the spring on the outside. In range of this a heavy force of Indians lay in ambush, knowing that those within must have water, and that the men would come in a body under guard for it.

11. **The women bring the water.**—The veterans within, with backwoodsmen's intuition, penetrated the designs of the enemy. Water they must have; but it seemed at the risk of almost certain slaughter. In the dilemma a wonderful device was hit upon. An appeal was made to the women to venture out in a body to the spring and bring in the water. The gentler sex doubted and hesitated. It was explained to them that the savages would not empty their guns and leave themselves exposed, with danger of a sally from the garrison, by firing at harmless women; that they were accustomed to bring the water, and the Indians would not suspect that their ambuscade was known to the whites. The women consented, and old and young, with buckets on their arms, marched demurely down to the spring, filled their vessels, and safely returned, under range of the guns of hundreds of murderous savages, tremulous as they entered the gates.

12. **The fighting begins in earnest.**—Girty was baffled and beaten in tactics. Several severe engagements took place, with heavy loss to the Indians and little to the whites. Re-enforcements began to arrive, and constant skirmishing and fighting occurred between these and the Indians on the second day. The garrison had now been much strengthened by accessions from without. Knowing that heavier reinforcements would soon be upon them, and beaten in strategy and battle thus far, Girty and his leaders sought the ruse of a parley. Girty offered liberal terms of surrender to the garrison; but these were rejected with derision and defiance. On the night of the 17th, leaving their camp fires burning, the Indian army silently retreated on the route toward their towns, beyond the Ohio. The next day one

hundred and eighty-one riflemen left Bryan's Station in pursuit. Three hundred more were a day in the rear, under command of Colonel Logan.

13. **The hasty pursuit.**—Without waiting for Logan's re-enforcements, the advance body followed the course of the Indian army, by Martin's Station, and what is now Millersburg. On Monday, the 19th of August, they came to Licking river, and gained the first sight of the enemy on the opposite bank. The pioneers here halted for a counsel of war. Boone, Todd, Trigg, Harlan and other officers advised that the attack should not be made until Logan came up with his troops. In the midst of general approval of this policy, McGary, whose impetuous and violent temper knew no discretion, and defiant of all authority, of prudence and of counsel from his superiors, turned his horse's head and dashed into the stream, calling on *all who were not cowards to follow him!*

14. **Battle of Blue Licks.**—The example of McGary was contagious. His hot words of challenge were not to be borne by Kentuckians, who did not yet know the decision of the superior officers. Some followed McGary, and finally all; and in much confusion Boone and other veterans restored order to some extent. The Indians had disappeared in the distance and lay in ambuscade in the front and on either side. The whites advanced prepared for battle, while the Indians in concealment waited until they were completely in the net. Suddenly the fighting began fiercely in front, and was continued with deadly effect on either side. The left wing of the Indian army now attacked in flank and rear, and soon the Kentuckians were involved in conflict with three times their number. They fought bravely and stubbornly, neither asking nor expecting quarter. Deeds of valor and heroism, singly and by squads, were frequent, but without avail to avert the bloody carnage of defeat. It was now the aim

and endeavor of the brave veterans to retreat across Licking river, and to save themselves and as many of their comrades as possible. Over sixty of the whites lay dead upon the field of battle, and many Indian braves. The retreat became a rout ; but the Indians dared not follow.

**15. After the battle.**—Among the slain were Colonels Todd and Trigg, Majors Harlan and Bulger, Captains McBride, Gordon, Kincaid and Overton, Lieutenants Givens, Kennedy, Lindsay and Rogers and others of the best blood and citizenship of Kentucky. No previous disaster brought so much of sorrow and mourning to the pioneer homes of Kentucky. It is a noticeable incident, and a stern lesson of history, that this terrible disaster and slaughter of good men were the results of the blind rashness of one man, Major McGary, who would recklessly imperil the lives of his bosom friends and neighbors rather than control a rash and violent temper.

**16. Logan arrives.**—Had the Kentuckians waited until Logan's force arrived, as Daniel Boone advised, the defeat of the Indians would have been nearly certain. If they had retreated across the Ohio without giving battle, the invasion of Girty would have been a failure, with severe loss. Logan came upon the field of battle with three hundred men, two days after, and buried sixty of the dead pioneers, whose remains were much mutilated by the savages first, and by the wild beasts and vultures after. The Indians recrossed the Ohio to their villages northward, excepting one or two detachments which remained to maraud in Kentucky.

**17. Capture of Kincheloe's Station.**—A detached body of Girty's Indians crossed the lower Kentucky river, and next appeared at Kincheloe's station, on Simpson's creek, in what is now known as Spencer county, which they surprised and captured. There were but six or seven families here, and a weak defense of men. Nearly all were tomahawked

and scalped or carried off into captivity. A number of the Indians were killed in the desperation of defense. Thomas Randolph sheltered his wife and two children, and killed and wounded a number of the savages in their assault upon them. At length his wife and an infant in her arms were murdered by his side. He instantly caught his living child under his arm, mounted to the loft, and thus escaped through the roof, cutting down two more Indians who barred his way. Some of these prisoners, women and children borne northward, were liberated and returned home the next year, after the treaty of peace with England.

**18. Revenge and retaliation.**—The military events of the season, the tragedy of Little Mountain, Holder's repulse, the siege of Bryan's Station, the battle of Blue Licks, and the massacre at Kincheloe's, results in rapid succession of one formidable Indian invasion, threw a damp and gloom temporarily over the spirits of the Kentuckians. This was but transient. The elastic and combative spirits of the people soon reacted, and retaliation was the cry of unsatisfied revenge. General Clark, yet in chief command, called for volunteers to rally and rendezvous at Louisville and Licking river. A force of one thousand men was soon organized and equipped, to begin the march from Losantiville, now Cincinnati, against the Shawnee tribes and their confederates. The Indian strongholds and towns, Chillicothe, Pickaway, Willstown and others, on the Scioto and Miami rivers, fell under the desolating campaign of the invaders. Villages were reduced to ashes, crops and fields laid waste, some of the enemy killed and wounded, and the remainder driven to the barren recesses of the wilderness. It was early autumn, and the savage tribes were unable to replant or restore the supplies of life for the winter and the year following. So sadly did they feel this blow that no formidable invasion of Kentucky was ever afterward made by the warriors of these tribes.

19. **Other incidents of hostilities.**—The ravages of Indian warfare were felt elsewhere throughout Kentucky, at White Oak Station, above Boonesborough, where the Duree settlement was broken up and ten or twelve persons murdered ; near Boonesborough, where Captain Nat. Hart was slain ; in Hardin county, where the veteran, Silas Hart, and his family were made captives ; near Whitley's station ; on the family of Samuel Davis ; and on other settlements where the defenses were weak. Late this year, Thomas Marshall and John May arrived as surveyors for the new counties of Fayette and Jefferson, opening a land office, each, at Lexington, and at Cox's station in Jefferson county. Soon after began that litigation over lands, which proved as great a scourge to our ancestors for two generations as pestilence or famine could have been.

---

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

---

### CHAPTER IX.

1. **Needs and supplies of the backwoodsmen.**—Of what use were the skins of animals? What utensils and furniture had they? What food? What fruits?
2. **Civil events 1781-2.**—What money was then in circulation? Its relative value? When was the first court in Lincoln county? Who constituted the court?
3. **Disasters of 1782.**—Where did Indian signs appear in March? What did Estill do? What befell the station next day? Who was killed? Who was captured? How did Monk save the women and children?
4. **Alarm and pursuit.**—Who bore the news to Estill? What did he do? Where did he overtake the Indians? Of what tribe were they?
5. **Battle of Little Mountain.**—Who attacked? What was the order of Estill? What befell the Indians? What the whites.

6. **Estill's heroic death.**—How did he die? What became of his slayer? How many whites were left unwounded? How many savages? How was Irvine saved? What became of the captive, Monk? What did he call to Estill's men? What of him after his escape?
7. **Adventure of Captain John Holder.**—What station was attacked in August? Who pursued the Indians? Where did a fight occur? What was the result?
8. **Siege of Bryan's station.**—When was it? By whom? Who was Simon Girty? What were his feelings toward the whites? What influence had he among the Indians? What tribes furnished warriors to his army?
9. **The Kentuckians taken by surprise.**—By what route did Girty come? What garrison was in the fort? How were they prepared for an attack? How did the attack begin? What did the men do when fired on?
10. **Siege and re-enforcements.**—How was the news sent out? What effect did it have? What help came to the garrison? Where was the spring? How was the water supply cut off?
11. **The women bring water.**—What ruse was proposed to obtain water? What did the women first reply? What did they finally do?
12. **The fighting begins in earnest.**—With what results to the Indians? What to the whites? What strengthened the garrison? What did Girty now propose? What reply was made him? What did Girty next do? How many whites pursued him?
13. **The hasty pursuit.**—By what route was the retreat? Where were the Indians overtaken? Who advised to wait for Logan's arrival? How was this advice defeated?
14. **Battle of Blue Licks.**—What effect had the example of McGary? How did the Indians meet the whites? What was the character of the fighting? How far did the Indians outnumber the whites? What obstructed the retreat? What was the loss on each side?
15. **After the battle.**—Who were among the slain? What effect had this disaster upon the settlers? What caused the disaster?
16. **Logan arrives.**—What forces had he? When did he reach the battle-field? What did he do there? Where did the Indians go?

17. **Capture of Kincheloe's station.**—What Indians captured it? Where was this station? How many were captured? How were they treated? What defense did Randolph make? How did he finally escape? How long were the captives held?
18. **Revenge and retaliation.**—How did the disasters of 1782 affect the people? What did they determine on? Where did Clark rally his men? How many? Where did they start from? On what Indian towns did they march? What injuries did they inflict? What effect did this punishment have?
19. **Other incidents of hostilities.**—What other places did the Indians attack? Who came out as surveyors this year? Where did they locate offices? What befell land owners about this time?



## PERIOD THIRD—1783-1800.

### CHAPTER X.—1783-86.

FROM THE TERMINATION OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE  
TO THE FIRST MOVEMENTS IN KENTUCKY TOWARD  
INDEPENDENT STATEHOOD.

**1. Peace with England.**—The good ángel of peace came at last, bringing joy to the hearts of all American citizens who were wearied with seven years of war. Articles of treaty were signed between our country and England on the 30th of November, 1782, but the news was not received in Kentucky until nearly four months later. All rejoiced, for the independence of the United States was conceded.

**2. Savage tribes quiet.**—The savage tribes whom England employed to wage war on the Western people soon learned that their powerful ally had agreed to cease the war, and not again in future to aid or incite the Indians to hostile acts against the whites. The border settlers had rest from strife for a time, and gladly turned their attention to improving their homes and fortunes. This promise of peace brought out increased numbers from the old States to seek homes in the fertile soil of Kentucky. Prosperity and content gladdened the hearts of all.

**3. Separate government wanted.**—As population and power increased, the settlers began to discuss among themselves the question of a separate government. They felt that they were too far away, and too much cut off by mountain barriers, to be much longer dependent on the protection and help of Virginia. Many were dissatisfied at the neglect shown them from the Confederate Union. Others were disaffected by liberal promises from Spain and France, if they would set up a government independent of the United States.

Mainly, the Kentuckians were loyal to their kindred; though it was seriously a question for years, whether it would be the better for Kentucky to become one of the States of the Union, or detach herself and set up an independent government.

**4. Spanish intrigues.**—Spain owned then all the country west of the Mississippi river, and all east of Southern Louisiana, to the ocean, thus controlling the navigation of this great river for several hundred miles above New Orleans. She wished Kentucky to withdraw from the Union, and offered the free navigation of the Mississippi river and other liberal advantages if the latter would do so. To further these ends she sent agents to intrigue with and bribe some noted men in Kentucky, and through these to seduce the people away from the United States. France actively aided Spain in these dangerous intrigues.

**5. Kentucky a judicial district.**—In March, by act of the Virginia Legislature, the three counties of Kentucky were made one judicial district. John Floyd and Samuel McDowell were made judges, and these appointed John May, clerk. Walker Daniel was commissioned the first attorney-general by the Governor of Virginia. A log house suitable for the sittings of the court was built on, or near, the site of Danville by the settlers, and at no cost to the State.

**6. Industry and prosperity.**—Now the fields bore ample harvests; cattle and hogs multiplied and grew fat on the nutritious pastures and the rich nuts of the forest; while the industrious housewife plied the hand-cards, the spinning-wheel and the loom. Immigrants and traders brought in some money, which, with supplies from other sources, met the simple wants of the people. Mechanics, divines, and schoolmasters came in to fill up the needs of improving society. Products and industries began to be more varied. Wheat and rye were added to the grain supplies, while mills

and distilleries were erected to consume the surplus of the husbandman.

7. **First foreign goods.**—Daniel Broadhead, a citizen of Louisville, this year purchased and hauled in wagons from Philadelphia to Pittsburgh, and by flatboats brought down the Ohio, a stock of merchandise, thus establishing the first store in Kentucky for the sale of foreign goods. For the first time our grandmother belles adorned their persons in calico, and our grandfather beaux proudly donned their first wool hats.

8. **Stations around Shelbyville.**—Squire Boone, elected to the Virginia Legislature, gave over his station, two miles north of Shelbyville, to Colonel Lynch, that he might place his family in greater safety in his absence. Captain Tyler and Bland Ballard built a station on Lick creek, four miles east of Shelbyville, known as Tyler's station. Owen's station was located near the site of Shelbyville, by Colonel Abraham Owen, who fell in the battle of Tippecanoe. Several other stations were erected in the vicinity, and many settlers located near.



CAPTAIN BLAND BALLARD,  
A PIONEER AND NOTED HUNTER AND INDIAN FIGHTER.

9. **Captain Bland Ballard.**—Among the early settlers, he became, as an Indian-fighter, as famed as Kenton. He was the son of the elder Ballard, of Tyler station. He was born at Fredericksburg, Virginia, in 1761, and died in Shelby county in 1853, ninety-two years of age. He came to Kentucky when eighteen years old, and joined the

militia. He served as soldier, scout and spy, in Bowman's expedition in 1779; in Clark's campaign against the Piqua towns in 1780 and in 1782, when a wound in the hip made him a cripple for life. He was famous for his daring personal adventures and as a scout and spy, especially in the Wabash expeditions of Clark, Scott and Wilkinson, and also with Wayne at the battle of "Fallen Timbers."

**10. Ambushes three Indians.—1785.**—Acting as spy from the mouth of Salt river to Westport, on one occasion when six or eight miles below the Falls, he discovered Indians near. Concealing himself in the bushes, he soon saw three Indians in a canoe leave the Indiana for the Kentucky shore. As they neared in range, he fired and killed one; the others jumped overboard and tried to drag their canoe into deep water. But soon he killed the second, and finally the third, Indian. For this service General Clark gave him a *linen shirt*, which was the only one he had for years, except those made of buckskin.

**11. Indians put to flight.**—On a scout to Saline Lick, Illinois, with one companion, they came suddenly upon a large body of Indians in the act of camping. Suddenly charging upon the savages, firing their guns and raising a yell, the Indians fled in a panic to the woods. Ballard and his companion at once mounted two of their best horses, and fled. For two days they were pursued, until they recrossed the Ohio, leaving the Indians in view on the other shore.

**12. Long Run fight.**—Captain Ballard was aiding the settlers at the stations around Shelbyville site to move to Beargrass, when they were attacked at Long Run, and so badly defeated. At the first fire of the Indians, in ambush, several women were thrown from their horses. Some he assisted to remount and escape, using his rifle with deadly effect in single-handed combats. Following to Floyd's

Fork, he concealed himself in the bushes and shot another pursuing savage, upon whose horse he escaped.

**13. Ballard, Sr., killed.**—In 1788, the Indians attacked Tyler's station, where the elder Ballard lived with his family. The latter had moved out near the sugar camp. Ben Ballard, the Captain's brother, while hauling in wood, was shot from ambush. This was the first they knew of the presence of Indians. Captain Ballard was at the fort with one old man. He hastened to protect his father whom the savages had assailed in his cabin. He used his rifle with deadly-effect, but not in time to prevent the massacre of the family. Besides the father and son, the Indians killed one full sister, one half-sister, the step-mother, and tomahawked the youngest sister, who recovered. There were fifteen Indians, of whom five or six were killed before they finished their bloody work.

**14. Captain Ballard's later life.**—Captain Ballard's pioneer life was full of such incidents of daring and peril. The massacre of his father's family led him to many revenges on the enemy. He was well known to many persons yet living. He was at times elected to the Legislature by the people of Shelby county. He led a company in the war of 1812, and was twice wounded at the battle of the Raisin where he was also among the prisoners so cruelly treated by the Indians and British.

**15. Battle of the Boards.** An amusing adventure is told of three men who left Harrod's station, in 1783, to hunt for some horses strayed in the woods. Indian signs were noted. At nightfall they sought shelter in a deserted cabin, and ascended to the loft and lay on the boards to be better concealed. Later in the night a party of six Indians entered the cabin to spend the night. For an hour or two the whites lay quiet and heard all that passed below. One of them then became restless, and tried to move so as to watch the

savages through a crack in the boards. Suddenly the frail support gave way, and the entire loft, with the three men, fell with a loud clattering noise on the Indians below. The latter, in terrible fright at such a novel attack, crawled out and fled in dismay to the woods, leaving their guns. The badly scared whites soon did the same, taking the trophies, and shortest route to the station. This was called "The Battle of the Boards."

16. **Wild cat and schoolmaster.**—A more serious adventure was that of Mr. McKinney, who was teaching in a log cabin in Lexington. Going early one morning to prepare for the school that day, a wild cat as large as a fox entered the open door and sprang on him while alone. A long and desperate fight ensued. Mr. McKinney finally killed the cat by pressing the life out of it against a projecting bench, while its teeth and claws were fastened in his body. He soon after fainted from the many wounds the animal made in its rage, but recovered.

17. **Death roll of pioneers.**—From 1780 to 1782 were years of blood and tears and sacrifice in Kentucky. This history recites but few of the tragedies that occurred. Captain Hart, in 1840, wrote. "I went with my mother, in 1783, to Logan's station, to prove the will of my father, who was slain in July before. *Twenty-three widows* were at the same court to obtain letters of administration on the estates of their husbands, who had been killed the past year." In 1781 alone, over one hundred men, women and children were slain within half-a-day's ride of Louisville. Among the most lamented deaths about this time was that of Colonel John Floyd, shot from ambush while riding through the forest near home.

18. **Treaty delayed.**—The English and American agents were tardy, in not arranging the details of the treaty of peace for eighteen months. Indignantly Virginia refused

to pass laws to permit Englishmen to collect debts in that State. England had refused yet to give up the forts, Detroit, Sandusky, Malden and others in the north-west. After 1784, the Indians, incited by the English at these forts, began again to war on the white settlements. Hostile feelings re-kindled on all sides. Those forts were on the territory of Virginia.

19. **Virginia's generous gift.**—In 1784, Virginia gave away and ceded to the United States all this vast domain of land north of the Ohio river, to be formed into new territories and States for the Union, and protected and defended by the general government. The territory thus generously ceded embraced the present States of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, Wisconsin and Minnesota east of the Mississippi or one hundred and sixty-nine million acres, from which the government has received over one hundred millions of dollars from sales. Before this, the United States did not own territory enough for a single State.

20. **Important conference.**—Late in December, 1784, an informal meeting was called by Colonel Benjamin Logan, to consider the military and civil condition of the country, too much neglected now by the Federal and Virginia governments, so far separated by the mountains. Of this meeting, Samuel McDowell was president, and Thomas Todd, clerk. The conclusions were that a separate State government was needed to meet the urgent wants of the people. In deference to Virginia another convention was called to meet the next May, to act and petition the parent State for consent.

21. **First convention for separation.**—On May 23, 1785, the delegates elected met in the first formal convention, at Danville, to take steps for a government of their own. It was resolved that a petition be presented to the Legislature of Virginia praying that the District of Kentucky be established into a State, separate from that Commonwealth; and

that another convention be called to meet at Danville in August, which was done. Lengthy addresses were prepared—one to the people of Kentucky; the other to the Legislative Assembly, by the glowing pen of General James Wilkinson, who assumed much prominence in these proceedings, while yet in active concert with the Spanish authorities at New Orleans. The action of Virginia was kind and favorable in response, and her consent for a new separate government for Kentucky given, on certain formal and safe conditions. Thus Kentucky was the first to ask to enter the Union as a new State.

**22. Massacre of immigrants.**—In 1784, Rev. Augustine Eastin led out a large party of immigrants, of whom were his family and a young lady, afterward Mrs. General James Taylor, of Newport. ✓ They were overtaken by another party, whom Mr. Eastin urged to camp with them, for greater safety. ✓ The latter refused and passed by, camping a mile or two farther on without putting pickets on watch. At dead of night, this party was attacked by savages, and most of them, men, women and children, massacred. ✓ Next morning Mr. Eastin's party witnessed the site of the tragedy. ✓ Long years after, they told of the mangled bodies, the scalps hung on the bushes, and other frightful evidences of barbarity seen by them. A father, mother and two children were attacked, and one child slain. The mother snatched the other, and fled to the darkness of the woods. The father fled also. Each thought the other dead, until they met by chance in Mr. Eastin's camp, two weeks after, and embraced.

**23. Mrs. McClure's rescue.**—In 1785, a party of immigrants under Mr. McClure were attacked in camp, near Skeggs creek, in Lincoln county, and six killed. Mrs. McClure fled to the brush with her four children. The Indians pursued and tomahawked the oldest, and captured her and the youngest. The news spread, and Colonel Whitley

went in pursuit with twenty-one men. Riding rapidly to reach first a pass he knew the Indians would aim to make, he posted his men in ambush. As the enemy approached, a deadly fire killed and wounded several of the savages, and dispersed the rest too suddenly for them to notice Mrs. McClure, her infant and a colored woman captured with them. These were safely rescued.

---

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

---

### CHAPTER X.—1783-86.

1. **Peace with England.**—When were the articles first signed? When did the news reach Kentucky? How was it received?
2. **Savage tribes quiet.**—What was the cause? How long did this quiet last? What did peace bring to Kentucky?
3. **Separate government wanted.**—Who wanted it? Why? What foreign countries tempted the Kentuckians?
4. **Spanish intrigues.**—What part of the country did Spain own? What navigation did she control? What did she offer the Kentuckians? What else did she do to influence them? What part did France take?
5. **Kentucky a judicial district.**—How was it made so? Who were the court officials? Where did the court sit?
6. **Industry and prosperity.**—How was it brought about? How were the simple wants supplied? What classes came out? What improvements were added to the country?
7. **First foreign goods.**—Who brought them out? In what way? What new garments were worn at this time by the women? What by the men?
8. **Stations around Shelbyville.**—What of Squire Boone's station? What did Boone do? What of Tyler's station? Of Owen's?
9. **Captain Bland Ballard.**—What of him? His birth and life? In what campaigns did he serve? For what was he famed?
10. **Ambushes three Indians.**—How and where did Ballard do this? What was the result? What present did Clark make him.

11. **Indians put to flight.**—Relate Ballard's adventure at Saline Lick? How did they escape?
12. **Long Run Fight.**—What part did Ballard take in it? How did he aid the women? How did he escape?
13. **Ballard, Sr., killed.**—Where did this occur? When? What others of the family were killed? What defense did Bland Ballard make?
14. **Captain Ballard's later life.**—Its character? What effect had the massacre of his kindred upon him? What of his later life? Where did he live and die?
15. **Battle of the Boards.**—Who was in this adventure? How did these three men lodge at night? Who came upon them? What caused the Indians a panic? What did the men do?
16. **The wild cat and schoolmaster.**—Name of the teacher? Where was he teaching? How was he attacked? How did McKinney save himself?
17. **Death roll of pioneers.**—What did Captain Hart report of murders from 1780 to 1783? What of the massacres near Louisville in 1781? What distinguished leader was killed?
18. **Treaty delayed.**—How did England delay the treaty? What step did Virginia take? What forts did England refuse to give up? What did the Indians then do?
19. **Virginia's generous gift.**—What territory did Virginia cede to the government? What States does it now embrace? How many million acres? What territory had the United States before this?
20. **Important conference.**—Who called this conference? When? For what purpose? Who presided at this meeting? What action was taken?
21. **First convention for separation.**—When was it held? Where? For what purpose? What action was taken? Who was most prominent in the meeting? What did Virginia respond?
22. **Massacre of immigrants.**—What party came out in 1784? What happened to another party following them? What did Eastin's party witness? What incident happened at the massacre?
23. **Mrs. McClure's rescue.**—When was it? Relate the facts? Who rescued the captives? What were the incidents of the rescue?

## CHAPTER XI.—1786-1790.

FROM THE ACT OF THE VIRGINIA ASSEMBLY, IN 1786, GRANTING  
SEPARATION, TO THE ACT OF THE OLD CONGRESS,  
POSTPONING IT TO THE NEW.

1. **The population of Kentucky.**—In 1786 this was thirty thousand. As they were able to defend and govern themselves, rather than rely on the general government or Virginia, they became impatient of delay in the measures for separation. In January, 1786, the Virginia Legislature acted favorably on their petition, but required that delegates be elected the following August to serve one year, who should meet in convention before September, 1787, and accept the terms of separation; but provided that this action be valid and final on condition that Congress should agree to ratify and admit Kentucky to the Union prior to June 1, 1787.

2. **Virginia's fear.**—Kentucky might be persuaded into secession from the Union after her act of separation, by the promises of Spain; Virginia, therefore, required the assent of Congress first. The Kentuckians were greatly provoked at their neglect by the general government. Five years after the treaty of peace, England yet stubbornly refused to turn over the north-west forts to the Americans, as she had agreed, and continued to bribe the Indians to war on the settlers. From 1783 to 1790, fifteen hundred men, women and children fell victims to savage barbarities in Kentucky. Intense hatred of the British, and bitter discontent at home, prepared them to listen to plans of secession.

3. **United States Constitution adopted.**—During the War for Independence, the thirteen colonies formed a league of union under the "Articles of Confederation and Perpetual

Union," adopted by the Continental Congress, November 15, 1777. After the war, a constitution for the United States was agreed on in convention, to take effect when ratified by nine States. Virginia was the tenth to ratify, by a vote of eighty-eight to seventy-eight, June 26, 1788. Kentucky had eleven votes in the Virginia Assembly, eight of which were against ratification. The total majority was but ten.

4. **The first administration.**—Under the constitution of the United States the first Congress organized March 30, 1789; the first President, George Washington, was inaugurated April 30, 1789. The new republic was a novel government of the kind. Many doubted its success, and it was for a time weak in its authority and powers. But its trusted leaders were among the wisest statesmen who ever lived, while Washington ruled with great prudence and skill, and gave confidence at home and abroad. Thus we grew to be a great nation.

5. **Indian raids renewed.**—By 1786, the Indians had fully renewed their predatory raids on the Kentucky settlers. Colonel William Christian, a prominent citizen, pursued a raiding band across the Ohio, with a party from Beargrass, overtook and defeated them twenty miles out, but himself was killed in the fight. His death was much lamented in Kentucky, and in Virginia also, where he had been an officer in the wars with England and the savages for many years. Higgin's block-house, about a mile above Cynthiana, was attacked and two men killed, McCombs and McFall. Williams safely passed out by the Indians and brought men to the rescue, and the savages were driven off. McKnitt was leading a large party of immigrants into Kentucky, mostly families of women and children. When near Laurel river they were surprised by an attack from a body of Indians, twenty killed and a number made captives. Captain William Hardin, a noted backwoods ranger, settled in what is now

Breckinridge county ; and led a force of eighty bold foresters against a band of hostiles who were founding a village beyond the Ohio, at Saline Lick, Illinois. Coming on their camp suddenly, but three Indians<sup>were</sup> found on watch, who were shot. The band was out on a short hunt. Colonel Hardin concealed his men and awaited their return. As the Indians, over one hundred in number, came in long range, one of Hardin's men fired too soon, and gave advantage to the savages. The battle was fierce. Colonel Hardin was badly wounded through both thighs. Yet he raised his body on a log and boldly gave orders and rallied his men, until the enemy was beaten off with a loss of over thirty.

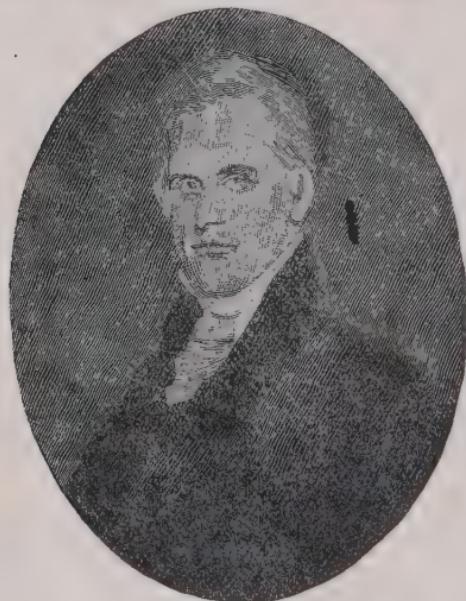
**6. A fruitless campaign.**—Virginia now no longer waited on the general government to protect the border settlers. She therefore gave the Kentuckians full power to raise and equip men, and defend themselves. One thousand men were soon rallied, and rendezvoused at Louisville. With General George Rogers Clark at the head of the expedition, they marched for the Wabash villages above Vincennes, while the main army supplies were sent in boats down the Ohio and up the Wabash river. The soldiers soon found that the great and famous Clark had wrecked his mind by intemperance, and was no longer competent to command. Then the army became disorderly and unfit for duty, and hundreds openly returned home. The expedition was a failure, and on the fatal account of whisky.

**7. Another campaign.**—Logan was detached by Clark to raise another body of Kentuckians to march against the Miami tribes. Several Shawanese towns were burned, much grain and provisions destroyed, and a number killed and made prisoners. Captain Christopher Irvine met a singular death here. A wounded Indian, crawling away through the brush, had killed two of his men who pursued him, from his hiding places. Irvine, excited, pursued next himself, though

warned not to do so, when the desperate savage ambushed, and fatally shot him also. The Indian was then killed.

8. **The fourth convention.**—This met in January, 1787, to consider the terms of Virginia's consent to separation. In the midst of the proceedings the news came that the Virginia Assembly had passed another act annulling the first; giving as a reason that the delay of Kentucky to act made it too late to obtain the consent of Congress by June, as required.

The new act postponed separation one year. There was some discontent, but the convention adjourned and the delegates went quietly home. Yet there were much chagrin and resentment among the people, at what they deemed neglect and trifling with them on the important matters of life and death, of property and of domestic peace. Again, through Secretary Jay's treaty, seven of the North States voted to cede to Spain the navigation of the Mississippi



SAMUEL McDOWELL,

PRESIDENT OF THE CONVENTIONS HELD, 1784-92,  
FOR THE ADMISSION OF KENTUCKY  
TO THE UNION.

river, the only outlet of Kentuckians for their produce. Thus the vote of one or two more States would have driven Kentucky to secede from the Union, to form a government independent of it, and to make the Allegheny mountains the western boundary of the United States. These States did not favor admitting Kentucky to the Union, and probably would not have objected seriously to separation. Spain

openly held out the navigation of the Mississippi, trading rights at New Orleans, and other tempting inducements to the Western men if they would thus secede.

9. **The first newspaper.**—There appeared at Lexington, issued on the 28th of August, 1787, the first newspaper ever printed west of the Alleghenies. It was the *Kentucky Gazette*, published by John Bradford, and soon became the medium for the discussion of all political questions and news of the day. Copies and files of this paper are preserved in the Lexington and other libraries, and the contents are very interesting. The people of Kentucky now thought their interests required it, and petitioned for one representative in Congress. This was granted, and John Brown, of Danville, was elected to serve them.

10. **The temptations of the Spaniards.**—In February, 1788, General Wilkinson returned from New Orleans, where he had carried a cargo of tobacco and other products, to find out what reception the Spanish commandant would give to Kentucky traders. General Miro, the commandant, was very generous, and not only allowed him to sell at high prices, but to deposit his tobacco in the King's store-rooms. These advantages he pictured to the Kentuckians in glowing terms. Spain would grant the free navigation of the Mississippi, and most liberal terms of trade to Kentucky as a separate government, but not to the United States. On July 29th, the sixth convention met to carry out measures to enter the Union as a State. A message came soon after the opening, that Congress had decided not to admit Kentucky until the new government went into effect, and a President and new Congress were installed. This was another cruel blow to the people's hopes. Many openly urged secession and separate government for the great West, with a protective league with Spain and France, or with England. But the convention agreed to order another election of delegates

to meet the following November, and to remain in office until January, 1790, "to do whatever, on a view of the state of the district, may, in their opinion, promote its interest." The reasons of Congress were plausible, based entirely on the change of the government soon to occur; and, when transmitted and read, satisfied many to await this important change.

11. **The conflict of opinion.**—Congressman Brown wrote to Judge Muter a letter, setting forth his opinion that the New England States would not consent to admit Kentucky into the Union, for fear of losing control of the government, urging that early steps be taken to separate, with or without the terms of Virginia's consent; that Don Gardoqui, the Spanish minister, had assured him that Spain was ready to concede all Kentucky would ask, if she would secede and form an independent government; that the treasury at Washington was empty, and Indian hostilities probable. Judge Muter published a reply in the *Gazette*, warning that any act of separation without the consent of Virginia was against her laws and the Federal Constitution, and would be treasonable; thus warning the public of supposed danger in the act of the last convention. In the excitement of the day, the people divided into the *Country party*, loyal to the Union, and the *Court party*, loyal to the Union if all their rights and interests were secured, but ready to secede and treat with Spain if not.

12. **Seventh convention.**—This met at Danville, November, 1788. Thomas Marshall, Newton, Crockett, Allen and Edwards led the *Country party*, and Brown, Wilkinson, Sebastian and Innis, the *Court party*, and the issues were of vital interest. A vote of thanks was tendered Wilkinson for an address read, setting forth the great advantages offered Kentucky in case Spain or England held New Orleans, and controlled the mouth of the Mississippi. The convention

resolved on addresses—one to the United States Congress, one to the people of Kentucky, and a third to the Virginia Assembly, setting forth in strong terms the grievances and wants of the district. The agents of Spain were actively intruding among the people. The temperate and discreet action shows a deep loyal attachment to the Union, and to their own kindred people.\*

13. **Indian outrages again.**—The house of Widow Skegg, with two sons and four daughters, on Cooper's run, Bourbon county, was surprised by Indians at night. The elder daughter plunged a knife into the heart of a savage, when she and her youngest sister were fatally tomahawked by his comrades. The blazing cabins made it light as day. One son ran out bearing his mother, who died in his arms pierced with bullets, as he escaped to the woods. The other son defended a widowed sister and her babe until she escaped. Firing on the attacking Indians, he clubbed his rifle and fought like a lion, until slain in the combat.

14. **A brave woman.**—In the same year, 1787, John Merrill, of Nelson county, arose and opened his cabin door, aroused by some disturbance at night. Shots from Indian rifles broke his arm and leg. Mrs. Merrill, a muscular and daring woman, assisted him in, and barred the door. The Indians breached it with their tomahawks, and tried to enter, one at a time. With ax in hand, the brave woman killed or disabled four in these attempts. Only three were left. Two of these tried to come in by the low, wide chimney top. Mrs. Merrill dragged out a feather bed, threw it on the fire, and brought them down suffocated. She dispatched them with the ax. The last Indian tried the door again, and received a deep cut in the cheek from the ax, which sent him off with a yell of pain.

---

\* This novel and extraordinary portion of our history is given in full detail in Smith's larger History of Kentucky, and should be read by every Kentuckian.

15. **A desperate fight.**—This took place from a flatboat, passing from Louisville to the salt-works, near Bullitt's Lick, on Salt river, in May, 1788. The crew were twelve men and one woman, under the lead of Henry Crist and Christian Cripps. A sound like the gobbling of turkeys lured them ashore. Soon they found a large body of Indians, and ran back to the boat, and sheltered behind the iron kettles with which the boat was loaded, and ranged on each side. The Indians, over one hundred in number, rushed on to the rifles of the crew, and many fell by the deadly fire. The boat was chained to the shore, and thus they fought for an hour, until freed, and able to float out into Salt river. The Indians crossed over and fired from both sides. Cripps and most of the crew were killed. Crist and two or three others escaped, while the woman was made captive. Cripps left a widow and a son and a daughter. The latter afterward became the wife of Governor Charles A. Wickliffe and the mother of Hon. J. Cripps Wickliffe, United States Attorney for Kentucky, under President Cleveland.

16. **Other raids and massacres.**—Many are recorded about this time; at Crab Orchard, Floyd's Fork, Drennon's Lick, Great Crossings, Blue Licks, Kenton's Station, Hardin's Settlement, and at other points. The Indians learned to man and fortify flatboats which they captured on the Ohio river, by which many lives and much property were lost. In 1788, the site of Cincinnati was surveyed for a city, and named *Losantiville*. Judge Symmes bought eight hundred acres opposite the mouth of Licking river for five hundred dollars, and resold two-thirds to John Filson and Colonel Robert Patterson. The surveys and settlements then began. Filson was slain by Indians, in the woods near by. This year the Legislature of Virginia created the counties of Woodford and Mason, and chartered the towns of Maysville, Danville, and Hopewell — now Paris.

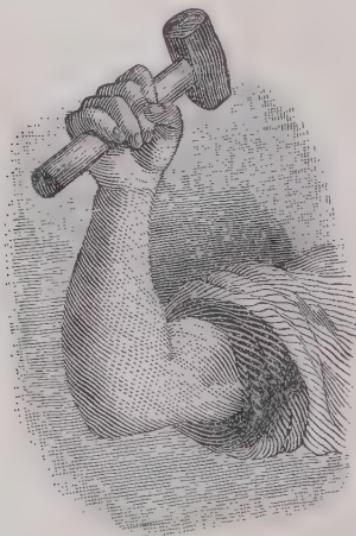
## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

---

### CHAPTER XI.—1786-1790.

1. **Population of Kentucky in 1786.**—What was it? What did the people wish? What did Virginia do? When should the next convention meet? What must Congress do?
2. **Virginia's fears.**—What did Kentucky threaten? What provoked the Kentuckians? What injuries were they enduring? How many fell victims from 1783 to 1790?
3. **United States Constitution adopted.**—What was the compact of union for the Colonies first? When adopted? What was the second compact of union? When did Virginia ratify it?
4. **Washington was the first President.**—When did the first new Congress meet? What of the novelty of this government? What of its statesmen? Of its President?
5. **Indian raids renewed.**—In what year? What of Colonel Christian's pursuit? What befell him? What happened at Higgin's block-house? What befell McKnitt's party? Where did Colonel Hardin attack the Indians? What accident brought on the fight? What was the result?
6. **A fruitless campaign.**—What privilege was allowed Kentuckians? How many men did Clark raise? Whither did he lead them? How did this campaign result?
7. **Colonel Logan detached by Clark.**—Against what towns did he proceed? With what effect? How was Irvine killed?
8. **The fourth convention.**—When did it meet? What news came during its sitting? How was this message received? What further provoked the Kentuckians? How did the North-east States act toward Kentucky?
9. **The first newspaper.**—Where was it published? When? What was its title? By whom was it published? What did the people ask of Congress? Who was elected?
10. **Overtures by the Spaniards.**—Who traded to New Orleans? How did the Spanish commandant treat him? What offers were made from Spain? Where did the sixth convention meet? What did Congress do? How did the people receive this? What action did the convention take?

11. **The conflict of opinion.**—What did Congressman Brown write? What did he urge? What did the Spanish minister promise? What reply did Judge Muter make? Into what parties did the people divide?
12. **The seventh convention.**—When did it meet? Who were the party leaders? To whom were addresses voted? What did the agents of Spain do?
13. **Indian outrages again.**—What of the attack on Mrs. Skegg's house? Describe the scenes?
14. **A brave woman.**—When was the attack on Merrill's house? Describe it? Describe Mrs. Merrill's defense?
15. **A desperate fight on a flatboat.**—When did it occur? Where? Who were the leaders? How was the attack made? Describe the defense? What were the results of the fighting? What of Cripps' widow and children?
16. **Many other raids and massacres.**—Where did these occur? What did the Indians do on the Ohio river? When was Cincinnati laid off? What name was given it then? Who were its founders? What happened to Filson? What counties and towns were created in 1788?



## CHAPTER XII.—1790-1795.

FROM THE MEETING OF THE NINTH CONVENTION, TO THE TREATY  
WITH THE INDIAN TRIBES AT GREENVILLE.

1. **State of affairs in 1790.**—In four years since 1786, the population had increased from 30,000 to 74,677. Such was the balance of feeling from the supposed indifference of the general government on the one hand, and the enticing offers of Spain on the other, that in the first Presidential election after the constitution, held January, 1789, no polls were opened in the District of Kentucky, and no vote was cast for Washington, who had no opponent.

2. **The door opened at last.**—Virginia passed a third act for the separation of Kentucky; but the conditions were unjust, and the *eighth convention* met and made known the objections. A fourth act of Virginia removed these, and on July 26, 1790, the *ninth convention* met at Danville and accepted the modified act of the mother State. In February, 1791, Congress passed the act to admit Kentucky as one of the States of the Union, to have effect on June 1, 1792. Delegates, elected in December, met in the tenth and last convention, at Danville, on the first Monday in April, 1792, to frame a constitution and form a State government for Kentucky. All conditions being met, Kentucky became a member of the Federal Union on June 1, 1792. For eight long years, through the proceedings of ten meetings and conventions, tried in the tortures of Indian warfare, tempted by the glittering offers of foreign nations, the loyalty of Kentucky prevailed in the end.

3. **Indian raids.**—Outrages were reported in 1790, at Lee's creek; on Hanging Fork of Dick's river; on the Ohio river,

killing all of the crew of John May's boat ; on three boats at the mouth of the Scioto ; on Beargrass ; at Big Bone Lick, and at many other stations. These bold outrages called for bold action. General Scott, with over two hundred volunteers, joined General Harmer, with one hundred regular troops of the United States army, who led this force against the Scioto towns. The Indians fled ; but some of them were killed, and their property destroyed.

4. **President Washington now turned his attention to the relief of the frontier settlers.**—Seven years after the treaty of peace, which ended the War of the Revolution, the British still refused to give up the forts in the North-west, as they promised to do. England held these posts garrisoned, and furnished the Indians with powder, lead, guns and blankets, and bribed them to war on and kill the whites, and destroy their property. Washington tried by peaceful means to have carried out all the terms of the treaty, which, in time, was done, and the forts given up. But Washington was aware that treaties with the Indians were worthless until they were subdued. This he would now try and do.

5. **Harmer's defeat.**—General Harmer, of the regular army, was placed in command of three hundred troops of the United States army, with orders to recruit more in West Pennsylvania and Virginia. The Kentucky volunteers joined them at Fort Washington, now Cincinnati, making the army fourteen hundred strong. It was marched in September, 1790, against the Miami towns, now the site of Fort Wayne, Indiana. General Harmer, like Braddock and most other regular army officers then, seems to have known little of the Indian methods of warfare. On the first advance of the army the savages burned their frail lodges and retreated. Instead of following in main force and guarding against surprise, he sent forward Colonel Hardin, of Kentucky, with less than two hundred men, who was ambushed and beaten back by six hundred

Indians. Harmer again sent forward small detached bodies of his troops, which, after hard fighting, were beaten in detail. All this while, for over two days, General Harmer, with his main force, lay six miles in the rear, and did nothing to support the few men in battle. The loss of the whites was two hundred, while that of the Indians was severe. Harmer was compelled to retreat.

6. **Kentucky's protest.**—Protest was made to Washington against sending old officers of the regular army, only to lead men into defeat and slaughter. The District was subject to Virginia yet, and Virginia to the United States. Hence, Kentucky could not raise troops in her defense without consent of these. She was granted a Military Board, with power to call out the volunteers when needed, to remedy this. In June, 1791, eight hundred mounted men were called out, and placed in command of Generals Wilkinson and Scott. They marched against the Wabash towns, about the present sites of Lafayette and Logansport. The savages were driven from village to village, several hundred killed and captured, and their grain fields and property destroyed. It was a heavy blow to them.

7. **Desperate attacks.**—Two boats coming down the Ohio were assailed by one hundred Indians, in three large canoes, this same year. Captain Hubbell's crew were nine men and eleven women and children. By desperate bravery and skill, the savages were beaten off with loss, and Captain Hubbell escaped to Maysville, with eight killed and wounded. The Indians during the fight attacked the boat of Captain Greathouse and crew, who made no resistance. The boat was captured, the men massacred, and the women and children made prisoners. Captain May, with his boat and crew, was decoyed and captured this year, and shared a sad fate. On river and land these raids and attacks, with varied results, were of frequent occurrence. One hundred

Indians fell upon a settlement of a dozen families in Elkhorn bottom, four miles above Frankfort, and killed six persons. On Green river, in Ohio county ; on Rolling Fork, in Nelson county, and at other points, murderous assaults were made.

**8. St. Clair's defeat.**—Orders were issued from the Secretary of War, at Washington, to enlist two thousand men for the regular army, to chastise the Indians in the West. General St. Clair, an old and gouty officer of the regular army, who had never shown much military skill, was placed in command. Kentucky was called on for one thousand volunteers ; but such was the aversion to putting St. Clair in command, just after Harmer's disaster, that none responded to the call. A draft was then made on Kentucky for the one thousand men. Every general officer in the District refused to accept the command of these, until Colonel Oldham did so. The army of two thousand was marched against the tribes on the Maumee, in North Indiana. General St. Clair mistook another river for the Maumee. On November 3, 1791, a large body of Indians made a surprise attack on an advance detachment, and threw it into a panic. A series of blunders and mishaps followed. The Indians pressed upon the white troops, some of whom stood and fought bravely. But the army did not recover its order, and the rout and slaughter were fearful. During the contest General St. Clair was lying helpless in his tent suffering with gout. He was placed on a pack-horse, with aides at his sides, and saved in the retreat. Eight hundred gallant Americans were lost, out of fourteen hundred, by the incompetency of their officers. The Indian forces were led by the noted chiefs, Brant and Little Turtle.

**9. First State government.**—By terms of the constitution, Isaac Shelby, who had been elected Governor, and the Legislature met at Lexington, June 4, 1792. A. S. Bullitt was Speaker of the Senate, and R. Breckinridge of the House.

James Brown was made Secretary of State, and George Nicolas, Attorney-General. John Brown and John Edwards were the first United States Senators. A heated contest soon sprang up in the Legislature as to the permanent location of the State capitol. Danville, Lexington and Frankfort, each, had ardent advocates; but it was decided finally in favor of Frankfort. The members of the Legislature were paid one dollar per day, and twelve dollars extra at the end of the session. At this time beef was sold in the market at two cents a pound; buffalo meat, one and a half cents; turkeys, fifteen cents each.

**10. Deaths of Colonel John Hardin and Major Truman.**—Their cruel massacre while on a peace mission to the Miami towns created a deep feeling among their kindred and friends in Kentucky. It was done in cold blood by an escort of savages who were piloting them alone through the forests to the towns named, and while together in camp. The brutal treachery was condemned by many in the tribes, but the guilty were not punished. In the same year, 1792, Major John Adair, with one hundred Kentuckians, engaged a body of Indians, under Little Turtle, near Fort St. Clair, and after a severe contest, with loss to both sides, the battle ended with victory to neither party.

**11. Would the Indians make treaties of peace?**—Many persons east of the mountains thought they would, and that the whites were provoking incessant strife. This morbid sentiment and sympathy for the savages, and against the border settlers, found active vent from the pulpit, by the press, and in Congress. To prove its injustice, President Washington sent commissioners to the leading tribes to offer just terms of treaty. But, elated over the defeats of Harmer and St. Clair, and incited by British bribes and aid, they refused to treat on any terms.

12. **Wayne's great victory.**—General Anthony Wayne was ordered by the war department at Washington to gather an army of regulars and volunteers at Fort Washington, and march upon the Maumee towns again. The Kentuckians were even more bitterly opposed than before to being led against Indians by old army officers, and refused to enlist. One thousand citizens were then drafted, and ordered with Wayne's army to begin the march from the old site of Cincinnati, under General Scott, late in October, 1793. The lateness of the season and the heavy rains caused General Wayne to fortify for the winter in the enemy's country, and finish his campaign in the spring. The Kentucky troops were sent home, to return in time; but now delighted with "Mad Anthony;" as Wayne was called. His brave and heroic conduct in the Revolutionary war, and his dash and daring, yet skillful display as a leader, had won their confidence. On the return next spring, sixteen hundred Kentuckians rallied to Wayne's command. Resuming his march in July, 1794, he came upon the army of the savages in large force, in order of battle, within a mile of a British post yet held contrary to treaty. The battle was promptly fought, the Indians defeated at every point, and, after great slaughter, put to general rout. They fled toward the fort, expecting the British troops to protect. Finding they dared not do so, no more resistance was offered. Their crops and property were destroyed over a large section. The victory of Wayne broke the spirit of the savages, and the chiefs met with white commissioners at Greenville and made a peace treaty, also ceding a large area of country to the United States.

13. **Sympathy for the French.**—Frenchmen who aided Americans in the war of independence went back to France burning with desire of liberty for their own country and people. They overthrew their king, set up a republic, and soon had all Europe in a blaze of excitement and fear. In

1793, a deep sympathy showed itself in America for the struggling French, upon whom England and other kingdoms warred. Nowhere was this feeling stronger than in Kentucky. Jacobin clubs were formed in this interest, in other States, and in Lexington, Georgetown and Paris, in Kentucky. Some were in favor of declaring war with England, and becoming an ally of France. Washington's government was too prudent for this. French agents came to America to arouse the people to active alliance, chief of whom was Minister Genet. Four of these came to Kentucky and began to enlist an army of two thousand men, under command of General George Rogers Clark, to go down and capture New Orleans and Louisiana from the Spanish king. Washington interfered and ordered General Wayne, with the troops in the West, to stop the expedition, which was done. Our ancestors little thought then of the wild anarchy and bloody orgies into which this French revolution was to plunge the mad people of France. Even Governor Shelby and other noted citizens and leaders shared in this sentiment, so great was the prejudice against the English, and their gratitude to their old French allies.

14. **Isaac Shelby.**—Governor Shelby reached the highest position in office of State, as he had won the highest esteem and confidence of the people. He was born in Maryland, and made North Carolina the State of his first adoption. In earliest manhood he was with the frontiersmen, defending against the savages. In the Revolutionary war, he was noted for the gallantry and skill with which he harassed and baffled the British in many campaigns. At Camden and King's Mountain, in North Carolina, his genius and energy did much to win the victories which drove the invading enemy from that section. He moved to Kentucky in 1783, on the conclusion of peace with England, and at once took an active interest in the civil, military and social condition of

the country. His counsel, his aid, his favor became of value to all. We find him now the first Governor of the young State ; and in 1812 he was re-elected by the people.

15. **Nicojack towns.**—The Indians in Tennessee had made several raids, and committed numerous outrages in the section south of Kentucky river.

In July, 1794, Captain Whitley, of Lincoln county, raised a body of one hundred men to join Colonel Orr, of Tennessee, with two hundred more volunteers, to march against and chastise these savage outlaws. The command of the whole was given to Captain Whitley. The towns were then surrounded and surprised and the Indians put to flight after a loss of near one hundred to them. Their houses, grain, and all their



GOVERNOR ISAAC SHELBY,

ONE OF THE HEROES OF KING'S MOUNTAIN, AND  
FIRST GOVERNOR OF KENTUCKY, IN 1792.

other property were destroyed.

16. **Indian incursions.**—The last in Kentucky were in 1793. Seven miles from Mount Sterling, Morgan's station was captured by a marauding party of savages, with twenty-one prisoners, mostly women and children—the men being out at work. A number were tomahawked, and the remainder carried prisoners to the North-west and sold ; but were set at liberty after the treaty of Greenville, in 1795.

17. **Big Joe Logston's fight.**—A young man of giant frame and strength, and of reckless daring and adventure, removed to Kentucky and lived with Andy Barnett, in Green county. In 1790, the Indians attacked the settlement and drove all into the stockade fort near. Joe Logston's restless spirit

longed for the woods, in spite of the dangerous foe. Venturing out on a hunt through the woods one day, heedless of warning, as he rode leisurely along a path, eating some grapes he had plucked, the ring of two rifles startled him and his horse. One bullet passed through the muscles of his breast, not disabling him much. The other ball killed his horse under him. He was on his feet in a moment, with rifle ready for action. He was a swift runner, but had boasted that he had never turned his back on an enemy. One huge Indian sprang at him after the shots, tomahawk in hand. Joe's ready rifle drove him behind a tree. Just then he saw a smaller Indian behind another tree, reloading his gun. A chance offered, and Joe fired and broke his protruding back. The big Indian now rushed forward to tomahawk him while his rifle was empty. The two giants met, and, alone in the forest, a desperate man to man battle for life and death took place. The struggle, long and exhausting, ended by Big Joe wrenching the knife of the savage from his hand, just as he had pulled it from his belt, and plunging it into the heart of the owner. Logston walked back to the fort pretty well satisfied to have come off so well. The dead Indians were found next day.

18. **Rest for Kentucky.**—Peace was now assured, so far as incursions and raids from the savages, North or South, were concerned. For twenty years, from 1773, the year of the first organized adventures to Kentucky, to 1793, the year of the last incursions, there had been almost incessant strife, with murders, pillages, and arsons innumerable, on the field of the "Dark and Bloody Ground." The last dying struggles of the Red man were about over on this theater of war; and the white man had won from the Red his most prized *hunting ground*, to hold it for himself and his posterity ever after.

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

## CHAPTER XII.—1790-1795.

1. **State of Affairs in 1790.**—What was the increase of population in four years from 1786? What question divided the people? When was the first Presidential election? Why did Kentucky not vote?
2. **The door opened at last.**—What did Virginia do? What did the eighth convention do? What the ninth? When did Congress pass the act to admit Kentucky into the Union? What final steps did Kentucky take? When did she enter the Union?
3. **Indian raids and outrages.**—Where were these committed in 1790? What step did General Scott take? Who joined him from the United States army? What Indian towns did they destroy?
4. **President Washington provides relief.**—How long since the Revolutionary War? What were the British and Indians yet doing? What course did Washington pursue?
5. **Harmer's Defeat.**—What army did Harmer command? Where did his campaign begin? Against what tribes was it directed? How was it conducted? What disaster befell Harmer?
6. **Kentucky protests.**—What were these? Why did the Kentuckians want to defend themselves? How many volunteers did Wilkinson and Scott raise? Where did they lead them? What was the result?
7. **Desperate attempts on two boats.**—On whose boat was the first made? What defense did Hubbell make? Whose boat was next attacked? What defense did Greathouse make? What attack was made in Elkhorn bottom?
8. **St. Clair's defeat.**—Who was General St. Clair? What did the Kentuckians think of him? Why would they not volunteer under him? What is a draft for soldiers? Who commanded the drafted men? On what campaign did they march? What of St. Clair's generalship? How did the Indians meet them? What was the result of the fighting? Who led the Indians?

9. **First State government.**—Who was elected Governor? Where did the first Legislature meet? What question arose about the capitol? Where was it located?
10. **Massacre of Hardin and Truman.**—On what mission were these sent? Who murdered them? For what? What of Major Adair's fight with the Indians?
11. **Would not the Indians treat for peace?**—What people thought they would? Why did they think so? What test did Washington make?
12. **Wayne's great victory.**—Who was General Wayne? Did the Kentuckians volunteer under him? Why not? How were troops raised? Why did they have admiration for Wayne? How many joined him the next spring? Where did General Wayne attack the Indian army? Near what place? What was the result of the battle? What treaty followed?
13. **Sympathy for the French.**—What effect did Democracy have on the French people? How did the Americans feel toward the French? Where were Jacobin clubs formed? For what purpose? What did the French agents do? How did our government check them?
14. **Governor Isaac Shelby.**—What of his life? Where was he born? What military services did he first render? What last? To what office was he re-elected?
15. **Nicojack Indians in Tennessee.**—What of their recent conduct? Who led a force against them? Who joined Whitley in Tennessee? What punishment was inflicted on these Indians?
16. **The last Indian incursion into Kentucky.**—When was this? Against what station? What became of these prisoners?
17. **Big Joe Logston's fight.**—Where did it occur? When? How did Logston meet the Indians? Describe the combat between them. What were the results?
18. **Rest for Kentucky homes.**—How was it assured? How long had Indian warfare raged in Kentucky? What did the Kentuckians finally win?

## CHAPTER XIII.—1795-1800.

FROM THE TREATIES WITH ENGLAND AND SPAIN, TO THE ADOPTION  
OF THE SECOND CONSTITUTION OF KENTUCKY.

**1. Courts and Legislature.**—By the legislation of 1795, six district courts were created, one each to sit at Paris, Lexington, Frankfort, Danville, Bardstown and Washington. These were held by two judges, each, and had much the same extent of power as our circuit courts now have. A court of quarter-sessions was also appointed for each county, with three judges on the bench, to try inferior cases. The salary of the governor was now one thousand dollars ; of the appellate judges, six hundred and sixty-six ; and of other officials in suitable proportions. The members of the Legislature were forty-two, as follows : Bourbon, five ; Clark, two ; Fayette, six ; Green, one ; Hardin, one ; Harrison, one ; Jefferson, two ; Logan, one ; Lincoln, three ; Mercer, three ; Madison, three ; Mason, three ; Nelson, three ; Shelby, one ; Scott, two ; Washington, two, and Woodford, three.

**2. Important treaties.**—Such were made with England, in 1794, and Spain, in 1795. By the former, England gave up the North-west forts, which was of chief interest to the Western people, as giving them assurance of peace. By the latter, Spain conceded to Americans the right of the navigation of the Mississippi river to the sea, and also the right of deposit at New Orleans for their produce for three years. This was more than the people of Kentucky had hoped for, and did much to quiet all further discontent with Washington's rule, as President; for much credit was due for his wise patience and prudence.

**3. Spanish intrigues.**—These were renewed in 1795, in the South-west, while the treaty was being made at Madrid, the

capital of Spain. The Spanish Governor of New Orleans sent Thomas Power on a secret mission, with large offers of money, to confer with General Wilkinson, now an officer in the United States army, and Judge Sebastian, of the Kentucky bench, chiefly as to further plans and efforts to detach Kentucky and the entire West from the Union, and set up an independent government, closely allied by treaty with Spain. Judge Innis, Colonel Nicolas, and William Murray were invited to the private conferences, but did not approve the object or show any favor to the Spanish agent. It was clearly shown after, that Judge Sebastian and General Wilkinson received large bribes from the Spanish authorities. In the midst of these intrigues, the news came of the treaty between the two countries, giving the West all they wished. Power came to Louisville, two years after, in 1797, as agent of the Spanish commandant of Louisiana, to try again the powers of intrigue and bribery, but in vain.

**4. James Garrard elected Governor.**—James Garrard was the choice of the people to succeed Isaac Shelby as Governor of Kentucky. There was much to be done to perfect the laws and policy of the infant Commonwealth, to which Governor Garrard gave attention. Of matters of public polity, the criminal code was defective, the revenue laws were inefficient, land titles were too much endangered, and the boundaries between Virginia and Kentucky yet unsettled. Harry Toulmin, a learned and an able man, was appointed Secretary of State. The governor's message expressed gratitude for the peace and prosperity of the new Commonwealth; the rapid increase of population and extension of settlements; the flourishing state of agriculture, of manufactures, and of improvements; and for the opening of the Mississippi to the sea to our commerce. Thus Kentucky was shown to have been in a favored condition at this date, June, 1796.

**5. The second President of the United States.**—John Adams was successively elected to take his seat on March 4,

1797. Washington had served two terms, or eight years, and in time issued his farewell address, saying he would not serve longer. The contest then came on between Adams, the candidate of the Federal party, and Jefferson, of the Republican party, both great leaders during the Revolutionary period and the formation of the new Union. The contest was as bitter as are presidential contests now, and as personal. In no State was there felt more of party rancor than in Kentucky. On counting the electoral vote it was found that Adams had a plurality of three votes. Jefferson having the next highest number, by terms of the law then, was declared Vice-President. The Republican party led by Jefferson then, in the principles and policy of government, was similar to the Democratic party of to-day, which claims this great statesman as its author.

6. **Land laws and titles.**—Land claims began to bring distress and ruin to many happy homes in the Commonwealth. The public lands were not surveyed by the government of Virginia into sections and townships, as they were afterward by the general government, when it came to own them. Those of Kentucky were never owned by the general government, as they were not included in the cession of the territory north of the Ohio river by Virginia. The Virginia laws of patent and entry were various and confusing, and allowed of survey and location by private persons, and of uncertain record in the county offices. The results were that two and three surveys and entries would be made of the same tract; or that one survey would overlap an adjoining one. The settlers were confiding and careless, and little thought of troubles ahead. Lands were cheap and plenty; and, as they thought, enough to content all.

7. **Land sharks.**—After a period when lands became valuable with the improvements put on them, and with the growth of the country, litigants began to search out defects in titles, and to sue the honest old settlers, to take from them,

by the arts and methods of the law, the homes they had built up for themselves and families. Thousands of the best citizens of the State were broken up and made poor and homeless again, by the cruel decisions of the courts. This kind of litigation was a withering blight to the State for fifty years, and caused many thousands of the best people to emigrate and leave it forever.

8. **The Alien and Sedition Laws.**—In 1798, Congress enacted what are famously known in our history as the Alien and Sedition Laws. The Alien law gave the President the power to order out of the United States all citizens of foreign countries visiting here, whom he might judge to be unsafe to the peace and good order of this country ; and at his discretion. Any alien, who should return after being thus ordered out, should be imprisoned as long as the President might think public safety required it. The Sedition law made any citizen subject to fine and imprisonment who might speak or print any falsehood, scandal, or malice against the government, the President or the Congress of the United States, with intent to defame or excite the hatred of the people against either of them. If this law were in force now, it would subject many of the opposing party to fine and imprisonment for their criticisms of the party in power. It abridged the liberty of opinion and speech to an extent to alarm the people.

9. **Centralization.**—There was a sentiment strong in the Federal party that it was dangerous to allow so much power to the States and people, and to leave the Federal head so weak. The bloody riots and mob rule—the wild excesses and anarchies into which the Jacobins had plunged the new Republic of France, since 1793, and in the like names of Revolution and Liberty with our own Republic, made this feeling more intense. Similar laws had been adopted by the governments of Europe to protect against the spread of

the Jacobin politics of France. But when enacted by our Congress, the States and the people took alarm at this trespass on their rights. There was at this time, and after, a small Tory element, mainly in New England, known as the *English Party*, who openly wished to return to allegiance to Great Britain, and avowed the intent to secede from the Union and do so, if possible. Out of these extremes in the politics of the day sprang the great and vital issue as to how much power, or sovereignty, was conferred on the Federal government by the Constitution of the United States, and how much was withheld to the States and people. Over this issue great national party lines have been often drawn, administrations built up or overthrown, and the greatest sectional war of all time fought. And yet parties and politicians are divided on this issue to-day.

**10. Opposition to the Alien and Sedition Laws.**—This was widespread. But it was expressed nowhere so strongly as by Kentucky and Virginia. Two able leaders of the Democratic party, Thomas Jefferson, the illustrious statesman of Virginia, and John Breckinridge, of Kentucky, conferred together as to the best method of combating the doctrines of these laws, so opposed to the spirit of our government. These two statesmen drafted a series of articles setting forth the contrary doctrines, and denying that Congress or the Federal government had any power beyond that given and named expressly in the words of the Constitution of the United States, and that no such power was given to enact the Alien and Sedition Laws, and others named. Some further declared that the States reserved all power not so mentioned in the constitution, and the right to judge and decide whether the laws of Congress and the acts of the general government were constitutional or not; and if not, to refuse to allow them to be executed within the State, they being null and void. This is the doctrine of *Nullification*, so many years a disturbing element in our political history.

11.\* **Kentucky boldly adopts.**—Introduced by John Breckinridge, the Legislature of Kentucky, in 1798 and 1799, adopted these resolutions. The first series of 1798 were sent, a copy each, to be presented before the Legislatures of the several States comprising the Union, with a respectful request that these would endorse them, and join in an effort to have Congress repeal the obnoxious laws. The Legislatures of the North-east States sent answers condemning the resolutions, and some of them in very bitter terms. The Southern States were more favorable. Thus one extreme in political doctrine begat another; and some of the advocates of nullification went so far as to contend that a State had a right to secede from the Union, if Congress enacted laws of this kind, or if unjust and injurious to the interests of a State. We shall see in future years how Federal encroachments, on the one hand, and nullification and secession on the other, came near wrecking the Union.

12. **Last years of Daniel Boone.**—By the bad land laws and litigation, the veteran pioneer lost all his fine lands in Kentucky, and came to such poverty as to lead him in one of his petitions to say, "*I have not a spot of ground whereon to lay my bones.*" He left Kentucky, saying that he would never return to live in a country so ungrateful. About 1796 he moved to Missouri and settled fifty miles west of St. Louis. Spain owned this territory then, and the Spanish governor gave him a liberal grant of land, and appointed him to an office. Around him his sons and daughters and their families settled. The broad forests were full of game, and here Boone again indulged his passion for the hunter's life. The old hero neglected to complete the title to his new land and home, and lost this also. Congress afterward made him a smaller grant. He died in Missouri on the 26th of September, 1820, in the eighty-sixth year of his life, and

\*These famous resolutions and historic details are given in Smith's larger History of Kentucky in full.

was buried by the side of his wife in a coffin he had made for himself some years before. In 1845, the Legislature of Kentucky had the remains of the pioneer and his wife removed and buried with honor in the cemetery at Frankfort.

**13. General George Rogers Clark.**—We have a sadder story to tell than even that of Boone's. Clark was the greatest military genius that figured in the early history of Kentucky. All of his achievements were done before he was thirty years of age. He settled about eight miles above Louisville. He fell into habits of intemperance which unfitted him for public service. He was voted large land bounties by Virginia, as the only pay for the valuable services he had rendered; but these were for years withheld from him, thus leaving him helpless and poor upon the bounty of his kinsmen. At last when Virginia sent a messenger to present him a jeweled sword voted by her Assembly, he responded: "*Young man, go tell Virginia, when she needed a sword, I found one; now I want bread!*" The young man bearing back this message, Virginia too late made good her broken promises of land to Clark. But the worn-out old soldier lived only a little while longer; and in February, 1818, died and was buried at Locust Grove. Now his remains rest beneath a plain headstone in Cave Hill Cemetery, at Louisville.

**14. Simon Kenton shared a fate like Boone's.**—Losing his lands, acre by acre, through the greed of the land sharks and the tortuous ways of the laws and the courts, this simple-hearted old pioneer found himself penniless in the advance of life. As allowed by law then, his body was taken for debt, and he was cast into prison by his creditors upon the very spot on which he built his first cabin in 1775. In 1799, thus beggared, he moved into Ohio and settled near the site of Urbana. In 1813, he joined Governor Shelby's troops, and was with them in the battle of the Thames. In 1820, he moved from Urbana to the site on the Scioto river, where the

Indians, forty years before, had tied him to a stake to be burned. This was his last home, and here he died on the 29th of April, 1836, at the age of eighty-one years. A few years before his death he made a visit to Frankfort, Kentucky, in his pioneer garb, an unknown stranger for a time. He was finally recognized by an old comrade, and treated with marked respect. The Legislature promptly released to him some mountain lands, which had been sold for taxes; and some friends soon after obtained a pension of two hundred and forty dollars a year, through Congress.

**15. A second constitution formed.**—This was drafted by a convention called, and which met July 22, 1799. The first, adopted seven years before, was found defective in some of its provisions. The main features of change were to have the Governor and other officers chosen by the people, instead of by electors. This constitution went into effect June 1, 1800.

**16. Troubles with France.**—As hearty as the sympathy of the American people had been with France, the relations of the two countries now became quite strained. The late treaty with England was the cause of resentful feelings upon the part of the French people, and also of their friends in America. This country had refused to become an ally of France in her war against England, as France had been an ally of ours in the Revolutionary war. This seemed like bad faith, and the French government refused to receive our minister. The two nations were now on the verge of declaring war, and actual hostilities occurred. France was at war with England, and her ships were seizing American vessels on pretext of their having on board British products, or of having sailed from British ports. Congress ordered our vessels to arm and resist these outrages.

**17. Actual hostilities.**—The friends of France in Kentucky boldly opposed war with the old ally, and expressed a hostile

feeling to England. All that saved the two countries from general war was the wide Atlantic ocean between. On the high seas it began in earnest. The United States ship Constitution, of thirty-eight guns, fell in with a French ship of forty guns, and, after a hot fight of an hour, captured it. A short time after the same ship met the French vessel, La Vengeance, of fifty-four guns, and after an action of five hours, drove her off with heavy loss. Three hundred private American vessels had been armed for self defense; but a change in the French government by Napoleon becoming first consul having occurred, a treaty of peace was made, and further hostilities ceased.

18. **African slavery.**—Slavery, introduced for gain, was now deeply rooted in the civil and social soil of Kentucky. Colored slaves formed a part of almost every important immigrant household that came into Kentucky. Yet many thus early began to raise their voices against the institution of slavery and for the freedom of the bondsmen. Among these were the great orator and statesman, Henry Clay, Rev. David Rice, a Presbyterian minister, the Revs. Tarrent, Barrow, Sutton, and Holmes ministers of the Baptist Church, and other men of influence. Previous to the Revolutionary War, under the laws of England, many whites were held in servitude by the colonists of Virginia. These were convicts transported from the mother country for penal offenses, and sold into slavery for a number of years proportioned to the crime committed. The independence of the United States put an end to this before Kentucky was a State.

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

## CHAPTER XIII.—1795-1800.

1. **Courts and legislation.**—What courts were created in 1795? With what courts compared? Of quarter-session courts? What was the salary of the Governor? of other officers? How many legislators had each county? How many in all?
2. **Important treaties.**—With what countries were they made? In what years? What important provision was in the treaty with England? What provisions in the Spanish treaty? How did these affect the people of Kentucky.
3. **New Spanish intrigues.**—Who was the Spanish agent? With whom did Power negotiate in 1795? What did Spain offer? What others were invited to the private conferences? What were the final results? How were these intrigues broken up? When did Spain renew the intrigues? Who commissioned Power again?
4. **James Garrard elected Governor.**—Who was the second Governor of Kentucky? To what did he give first attention? What measures needed to be legislated on? Who was made Secretary of State? For what did the Governor express gratitude in his message?
5. **The second President of the United States.**—Who was he? When was he inaugurated? What had Washington done? Who opposed Adams? What party supported Jefferson? What office did he succeed to?
6. **Land laws and land titles.**—What distress did these bring? To whom did the Kentucky lands first belong? To what State next? How were they surveyed? What confusion followed.
7. **Land sharks.**—Who were these despoilers? What distress did they bring on the people? What injury did this confusion of titles bring on Kentucky.
8. **The Alien and Sedition laws.**—When were they enacted? What was the Alien law? What was the Sedition law? What powers did they give the President.
9. **Centralization.**—What sentiment inclined to this? What encouraged it? Why did some favor a strong Federal govern-

ment? What of the Tory party? What party favored more liberal States' Rights? How long has the issue of Federal power and States' Rights divided national parties.

10. **Opposition to the Alien and Sedition laws.**—Who drafted a protest against these? What Legislature passed the first resolutions of protest? What did the resolutions declare? What is nullification?
11. **Kentucky resolutions.**—Who introduced the resolutions of 1798? Where were copies sent? How did the Legislatures of other States respond? How did the Southern States respond? What of the right of secession?
12. **Last Years of Daniel Boone.**—What misfortunes befell him? What did he say of these? When did he go to Missouri? Where did he locate? What nation owned that country then? What did the Spanish Governor do? What life did Boone then lead? Where did he die? At what age? How was he buried? When were his remains removed to Kentucky?
13. **Of General George Rogers Clark.**—What of his genius and works? Where did he settle? What habits ruined him? How did Virginia reward him? Relate the incident of the sword presentation. Where did he die? Where was he buried?
14. **Simon Kenton shared a fate like Boone's.**—What misfortunes befell him? Why was he in prison? Whither did he move in 1799. Where was he in 1813? What of him in 1820? When did he die? At what age? What of his visit to Frankfort, Kentucky? What pension was given him finally?
15. **The second Constitution for Kentucky.**—When did the Convention meet? What change did it make in the Constitution? When did it go into effect?
16. **Troubles with France.**—What offended France? What did she want America to do? Did hostilities commence? Was war declared? What insults did she inflict?
17. **Actual Hostilities.**—What was the feeling in Kentucky for France? What toward England? What fighting took place on sea? What second battle followed? What caused hostilities to cease?
18. **African Slavery.**—What of slavery in Kentucky? What sentiment opposed it? What leading men urged the emancipation of slaves? What of white slavery in Virginia?

## PERIOD FOURTH—1800-1815.

FROM THE ADOPTION OF THE SECOND CONSTITUTION OF  
KENTUCKY TO THE CLOSE OF THE WAR  
OF 1812-15 WITH ENGLAND.

---

### CHAPTER XIV.—1800-1812.

FROM THE PURCHASE OF LOUISIANA BY FRANCE, TO THE  
EARTHQUAKE AT NEW MADRID AND HICKMAN.

1. **Nature and customs of the Indians.**—The Indians are like all other rude and untutored races or tribes of people who have lapsed into the lower stages of barbarism—the creatures of passion and appetite; yet none of the barbarous races, red, white or black, have a more marked and individual character, showing the possession of latent faculties of mind of a high order, of resolute will, and of rare qualities of physical action and endurance. We have described the ceremonies of adoption into the tribe, in the case of Daniel Boone.

2. **Gallantry and courtship.**—Gallantry among young braves, and coquetry on the part of the maidens, are not wanting in the social relations, however quaintly form and expression may be given to these. In the wild, rude dances, heads were often bent close together as opposite lines would meet, and soft whispers, covert glances, and gentle taps on the cheek were frequent indices that Indians are sensible to the charms and love signals, which are but human after all. But the courtship differs from that of the whites. With them, the coyness, reserve, and pretty delays are more

confined to the male sex. The young squaws are bold and forward ; and by no means so delicate in urging their devotions ; and a handsome or bright young brave is often trapped in the toils of these female charmers.

**3. Indian hospitalities.**—It is the custom among Indians to invite every visitor to eat as soon as he enters the wigwam. The host is much offended if the visitor refuses to eat ; while the guest is insulted if the food is not set before him, even though he may have partaken of a meal an hour before. This custom suited the Indian habits and digestion very well, but to the white man it imposed an etiquette which often brought much pain and annoyance for him to comply with.

**4. Feast or famine.**—Depending on hunting and trapping for wild meat, as the Indian did, there was usually a feast or a famine within. Sometimes the meat of game was all the food he had, and as long as this lasted the feast went on ; the supply exhausted, there was a famine for days. The settled tribes raised corn and vegetables, but these lasted only for a part of the year. During the winter and early spring months the improvident savage lived as best he could, mainly upon the wild meat of the woods. Only necessity drove the vagrant glutton from his wigwam, with his gun or his bow and arrow, to supply the needs of hunger. When the squaws tilled the fields and gardens with their primitive wooden implements, in the harvest season, there was plenty to eat ; but when the reliance was on the indolent bucks, there was often fast, and sometimes famine.

**5. Cunning devices and strategy.**—The devices adopted by the savages to allure and betray an enemy were often curious and wonderful. They would sometimes deceive by imitating the hoot of an owl, the human-like wail of the catamount, or the bark of the wolf, at night ; or the call of the turkey, the bleat of the fawn, or the bark of the dog by

day, and thus deceive the unsuspecting. Instances were known where they cut off the feet of buffalo and elk at the ankle joint, and, fastening these hoofs to their own feet, would make tracks through the frequented forest, and near salt springs, and then place themselves in ambuscade, when they were conscious of an enemy in the vicinity. The braves of an opposing tribe, falling upon these tracks of buffalo and elk, were almost sure to follow them and fall into the ambuscade. On one occasion, a small party of Catawbas thus ambuscaded a more powerful body of Shawanees, but feeling unable to give them final battle, they placed in the path of retreat a number of slender reeds, sharpened at the end and dipped in rattlesnake poison. The Shawanees in pursuit were wounded by these concealed weapons and fell by the way-side. The Catawbas turned upon and overpowered them.

6. **Indolence and sporting.**—When not upon the war-path the warriors are shiftless and indolent. Nothing arouses them but necessity or excitement. [In the season when roasting-ears and vegetables were made plenty by the labor and industry of the squaws, the men lounged at home] utterly inactive, except in their sports. Then they dance with fantastic motions, play their games, or gamble for gain, feasting in the meantime on the fruits of the field until all are consumed. The squaws are able to pack immense burdens upon their shoulders, and to bear incredible hardships.] The men are remarkable for their long endurance and swiftness of foot, and for their stoic forbearance under suffering and privation.

7. **Treatment of children.**—The savages are not very strict with their children. Bodily punishment is rare, and looked upon as degrading. Ducking in cold water is the more common punishment; hence the children are much better behaved in winter than in summer. Instead of a cradle for the infant, a board, shaven thin, is prepared. On this the

infant is placed, with its back to the board at a proper distance from the top. Near the lower end is a projecting piece of wood. This is covered with the softest moss, and the heels of the infant rest upon it. Over the head of the child there is a hoop, projecting four or five inches from its face. Two holes are bored on either side of the upper end of the board, for the passage of the deer skin strap. This rests on the forehead of the mother. The child is now bandaged to the board, from the feet to the shoulders, binding the arms and hands to the sides. With this contrivance she carries it on her shoulders, leans it against a tree, or lays it upon the ground. When of age sufficient, the board is removed, and the child taught to cling to its mother's shoulders, and otherwise to help itself.

**8. Religion of the Indians.**—The Indians are very superstitious; yet their religion is more nearly a simple deism than that of most savage nations. One great spirit is generally worshiped among them, though different tribes give him different names. On the prairies of the West, he is termed Wahcondah, or Master of Life: by the tribes on the Lakes, he was called Manitou, or the Spirit; and by the Miami tribes he was known by the title, Owaneeyo, or The Possessor of all Things. They believe in a future state, in which they shall be introduced to ample hunting grounds, and where their passion for hunting and sporting shall be indulged without limit.

**9. Dances and debauchery.**—The Indians are immoderately fond of whisky. But they prepare for a drunken debauch, in which the whole tribe joins, with more system and care than the whites. They put out of reach their tomahawks, knives and dangerous weapons, and they appoint a few warriors to keep sober and preserve order. Both sexes then drink to excess, and soon plunge into the wildest orgies of intoxication. The Indians paint in black and red for the

war dance ; in green and white for the peace dance ; in black for dances over the dead, and in various other colors for the green-corn dance, the wabana, in honor of the devil, and others. In their war dances they repeat, in guttural tones, their deeds of murder, of scalping, of theft and other cruelties, with fiendish boast and pride, to the applause of the barbarian audience.

10. **The purchase of Louisiana from France.**—In October of the year 1800, by the secret treaty of Ildefonso, Spain sold and ceded to France the entire territory west of the Mississippi river, then known as Louisiana, with its capital at New Orleans. This becoming known, created intense excitement throughout the United States, and an effort was made in Congress to instruct the President to seize New Orleans and hold possession of that country. Peaceful diplomacy prevailed. Napoleon Bonaparte, then First Consul of France, fearing the English navy might capture New Orleans, and being in need of money for his military campaigns, was found willing to sell this province at a reasonable price. Our Minister at Paris, James Monroe, negotiated the purchase of Louisiana from Napoleon for the sum of fifteen millions of dollars.

11. **Election of Governor.**—In 1804, Christopher Greenup was elected Governor, and John Caldwell, Lieutenant-governor of Kentucky. John Rowan was made Secretary of State. This year Jefferson was re-elected President, and on forming a new cabinet, he appointed John Breckinridge, author of the resolutions of 1798, Attorney-general of the United States. The next year after, this distinguished Kentuckian died, in the prime of manhood, widely lamented as a great personal and public loss.

12. **Conspiracy of Aaron Burr.**—In 1805, Aaron Burr, recently Vice-president of the United States, visited Kentucky and began laying his plans for the great conspiracy for which he has become noted in history. His headquarters

were at Blannerhassett's Island, in the Ohio river. His plans and designs were obscured in secrecy, and there has always been much mystery as to what these were. It is most probable that Burr dreamed of establishing a new empire of the South-west, with a capital at New Orleans. But if this proved impossible, then he would move all the forces he could organize as far westward as Texas, within the Spanish territory of Mexico, and found an empire there. In his schemes he was baffled by the vigor with which he was prosecuted as a conspirator, until he was compelled to abandon all hope and effort of carrying them out.

**13. Henry Clay settles at Lexington.**—In 1798, in the twenty-first year of his age, Henry Clay, the greatest of American orators and statesmen, came to Kentucky and located at Lexington for the practice of law. He was born April 12, 1777, in Hanover county, Virginia. His father, a Baptist clergyman, died in the fifth year of his son's age, leaving him to a mother's care. His boyhood and youth were spent in an experience of the toils and hardships of necessity; yet the diligent and faithful devotion of young Clay in his duties made this a discipline which brought out the great manhood of his after life. His talent in his chosen field of action soon brought him into prominence in the political arena, and into lucrative practice in his profession.

**14. Clay's early promotion.**—At twenty-five years of age he was elected to the State Legislature; at thirty, was a Senator of the United States. From this period on, with few brief intervals of exception, his long life was spent in the public service, and in the highest offices within the gift of the government or people, except that of the Presidency. Such were his talents and fame, that an elevation to the high office of Chief Magistrate of the nation could have added nothing of honor or renown to his name.

15. **Bad feeling between the United States and England.**—In 1808, James Madison was elected to succeed Jefferson as President. Charles Scott was elected Governor of Kentucky and Gabriel Slaughter, Lieutenant-Governor. Jesse Bledsoe was appointed Secretary of State. Great Britain and France, yet at war, had provoked a spirit of resentment and anger by their blockade decrees, embargoes, and other injuries to American commerce. About this time, the English ship Leopard made an attack on the United States war vessel, Chesapeake. It was now felt that the issue of war was but a question of time, and not far off.

16. **Prosperity of Kentucky.**—The census of 1810 showed Kentucky to be the seventh State in the Union, in population, which was four hundred and six thousand five hundred and eleven. Of these, there were over three hundred and twenty-four thousand whites, seventeen hundred and seventeen free colored, and eighty thousand five hundred and sixty-one slaves. This was an increase in ten years of eighty-four per cent. The slaves had increased over ninety-nine per cent.

17. **Battle of Tippecanoe.**—General William H. Harrison was in command of the army of the North-west. Under the instigations of the British officers and agents, and under the leadership of the great Shawanee chief, Tecumseh, and his brother, the Prophet, the Indian tribes on the Miami and Wabash rivers, and on the Lakes, had been aroused again to hostilities, after years of comparative quiet. The allied Indian army, composed of the warriors of these tribes, and under the command of the Prophet, were met and attacked upon the field of Tippecanoe by General Harrison and his army, and disastrously defeated and routed. Among the fallen of the American army were two eminent Kentuckians, Colonels Abraham Owen and Joseph Hamilton Daviess.

18. **The great earthquake.**—On December 16, 1811, was felt the first shock of the great earthquake on the Mississippi river and its shores, in the vicinity of Fulton county, Kentucky, and New Madrid, Missouri, the most terrible and extensive in its effects ever known upon this continent.

Though it centered at this spot, its vibrations were felt at Pittsburgh, and on the Atlantic shores, and among the white settlers farthest west. It drove up-stream the waters of the Mississippi for several hours, by elevating its bed. Forests sank out of sight upon the shores, into deep chasms of the earth many miles long ; and lakes, formed by these chasms, yet stand as monuments of the awful com-



THE PROPHET, ELS-KWAU-TA-WAW,  
INDIAN CHIEF IN COMMAND AT THE BATTLE  
OF TIPPECANOE.

motions and violence of the forces beneath the earth's crust.

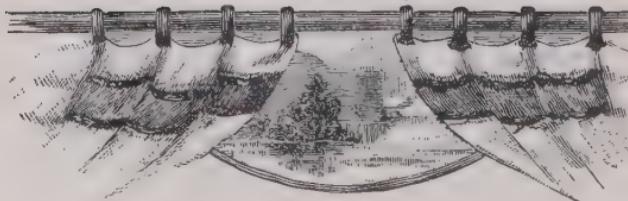
## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

### CHAPTER XIV.—1800-12.

1. **Nature and customs of the Indians.**—What is common to all barbarians? What was peculiar to the Indians? What of the ceremony of adoption into their tribes.
2. **Gallantry and courtship.**—Describe these among the Indians? How does courtship among them differ from that of the whites? What sex make the advances?
3. **Indian hospitalities.**—In what way do they show these? What of the host? What of the guest?

4. **Feast or famine.**—On what do the Indians depend for meat? When the food is abundant how do the savages live? How, when the supply is gone? Who tilled the fields? What did the men do?
5. **Cunning devices and strategy.**—How did they deceive by imitating sounds? How by the tracks of wild animals? Relate a device of the Catawbas?
6. **Indolence and sporting.**—How do they indulge these? What sports and games have they? What of the labors of the squaws? What of the endurance of the men?
7. **Treatment of children.**—Are the savages strict with their children? What do they substitute for whipping? How do they confine their infants? How does the mother then handle her child? How can the child then be placed?
8. **Religion of the Indians.**—What is the nature of their religion? In what Deity do they believe? What is this god called by different tribes? What by the Miami tribes? What do they believe their future state will be?
9. **Dances and debauchery.**—Of what are Indians fond? How do they prepare for a debauch? What parties engage in the orgies? How do they paint in their different dances? What do they chant in their war dances?
10. **The purchase of Louisiana by France.**—When was it made? Where? How did this affect the Americans? How was the excitement allayed? From whom did we purchase Louisiana? For what price? Why was Napoleon anxious to sell?
11. **Election of Governor.**—State who was elected in 1804? Who was elected President? What Kentuckian did he appoint in his cabinet? When did Breckinridge die?
12. **Conspiracy of Aaron Burr.**—When was this? Who was Aaron Burr? Where were his headquarters? What did he conspire to do? How were his designs defeated?
13. **Henry Clay settles at Lexington.**—When? At what age? When was he born? Where? What of his parents? What was his early life and training? What was his first success at Lexington?
14. **Clay's early promotion.**—At what age was he a legislator? At what, a United States Senator? What was his promotion after? What of his fame?

15. **Bad feeling between United States and England.**—Who was elected President in 1808? Who, governor? What foreign governments committed outrages on American commerce? What was the first act of hostilities?
16. **Prosperity of Kentucky.**—How was it shown in the census of 1810? What was the population? How divided? What per cent. of increase was this?
17. **Battle of Tippecanoe.**—Who commanded in the North-west? What great chiefs led the Indians? What decisive battle was fought? What was the result? What noted Kentuckians were killed?
18. **The great earthquake.**—When was it? Where was it central? How far were its vibrations felt? How did it affect the Mississippi river? What were its effects on either shore? Are these effects yet visible?



## CHAPTER XV.—1812-15.

### THE WAR OF 1812-15.

1. **Second war with England.**—For the second time Isaac Shelby was elected Governor of the Commonwealth in 1812, and Martin D. Hardin was made his Secretary of State. The public mind settled on this cherished son of Kentucky for Governor, in view of the now almost certain rupture with England, and consequent war between the two countries. Governor Shelby's age and experience made him wise and discreet in council, and efficient in meeting the military demands of the occasion. Since the war for independence, in which England lost the American colonies, chagrin and resentment seemed to possess the spirit of her rulers. Her policy toward this country was marked by injustice and insult, to which were gradually added wanton outrages upon our national rights. From the frontier posts in Canada, her agents yet continued, by secret intrigues and bribes, to incite the savages to war and rapine upon the Western settlers.

2. **Outrages on the high seas.**—The United States was now, next to England, the greatest maritime power on the waters. The contest upon the seas between France and England gave to American ships a safer carriage to and from all ports in the world. By orders in council and decrees of both Great Britain and France, the ports of these kingdoms and all their provinces were declared in a state of blockade. Any American vessel sailing to or from a port of one of these countries was liable to be captured and made a prize of by the other. These were blockades on paper, and not actually enforced. Under these orders and decrees, one

thousand American vessels, trading at French ports, had been seized by armed ships of England, and confiscated, with their cargoes. Many American seamen thus captured had been impressed into the naval service of England. These outrages became intolerable, and war was declared against England in June, 1812.

3. **War spirit in Kentucky.**—Our government had prudently refused to be an ally of France against England, during the revolution and the reign of the great Napoleon, in return for the aid of France in our war for independence. Now, events forced another alliance of the two against their old and common enemy. In Kentucky the war was popular, for her people had suffered the greatest of insults and injuries from the Indian allies and instruments of revenge, and no people had a better reason for intense resentment against the English people and government. The President of the United States called for one hundred thousand militia, while the forces of the regular army were increased. The quota of Kentucky was fifty-five hundred men. Within a few weeks, in answer to the call, seven thousand volunteers were enrolled and organized into ten regiments.

4. **Hull's surrender.**—A brigade of four regiments, of two thousand men, under command of General John Payne and Colonels Scott, Lewis, Allen and Wells, rendezvoused at Cincinnati, on their way to join the army of General Hull, who had recently invaded Canada from his base, at Detroit. On crossing the Ohio river, the startling news came of the shameful surrender of General Hull and the army under his command, with the fort at Detroit, to Général Brock, in command of a British force little more than one-half his own. The disgrace of this event was felt even more keenly than the disastrous loss. General James Taylor, of Kentucky, and other leading officers indignantly refused to assist in drawing up the terms of surrender. But the war spirit burned even more fiercely than before the surrender.

16-13

5. **General Harrison takes command.**—General Harrison, in command of the North-west for several years, in the latter part of August, 1812, began organizing and drilling a new army at Fort Washington, to re-occupy the field recently lost by Hull's disaster. Here the Kentuckians joined him. Learning that the Indians had invested Fort Wayne, on the Maumee river, he marched for that post. The Indians raised the siege and dispersed on his approach. Detachments sent out destroyed the towns and crops of the tribes in reach. Frequent skirmishes and light battles occurred during the autumn months, but without decisive results. The heavy rains now converted the country into swamps and mire, making the march of an army impossible. Though six thousand men were under arms, the plan of capturing Malden had to be postponed.

6. **Battle of Frenchtown.**—General Winchester was at Maumee Rapids with fifteen hundred troops; and General Harrison, at Fort Sandusky, with twenty-five hundred. In January, 1813, a force of about one thousand British and Indians invested and threatened to destroy the settlements around Frenchtown, on the Raisin, some forty miles from Maumee Rapids. Colonels Lewis and Allen were despatched, with seven hundred men, to that point. The enemy were attacked by these Kentuckians, driven out of Frenchtown, and forced to retreat some two miles before nightfall. This news led General Winchester to march at once to the support of this detachment. Large re-enforcements of British and Indians were sent also from Malden.

7. **Massacre at Raisin.**—On January 22d, early in the morning, the American troops were fired upon and charged by a body of British regulars, with Indians on the right and left of the attack. The surprise was complete, from the neglect of General Winchester to put out his pickets on the night before. His command on the right was overpowered

and driven back; while Colonel Lewis, who had guarded his troops against surprise, repulsed the enemy with heavy loss on the left and center. General Winchester made strenuous efforts to rally his men, but failed. Panic ensued, and the retreat became a rout. Winchester's command being entirely cut off from the left wing, in complete disorder and at the mercy of the Indians, one hundred were butchered within a space of one hundred yards square. This massacre continued wherever the savages could reach and strike a fatal blow. The remaining troops under Majors Graves and Madison, after gallantly fighting to the end of hope, were surrendered to the British commander. The Indians continued their cruel murders for two days after the battle, wherever the prisoners could be reached by them. The Americans killed and massacred were nearly three hundred men, and six hundred were made prisoners. The British loss was about two hundred killed and wounded, and that of the Indians heavy.

8. **Cruelty to prisoners.**—The conduct of Colonel Proctor and Major Elliot, in command of the British and Indians, was marked by inhuman treatment and broken faith. Prisoners were murdered under their eyes by the savages, without an effort by these officers in authority to prevent. The living were crowded into small muddy pens, in bleak winter weather, without tents or blankets, and with barely fire enough to keep them alive. The British offered to pay the Indians for all the scalps they would bring in. The Indians found that more money would be paid for ransoms of prisoners than for scalps. Hence, their cupidity caused them to spare the tomahawk and scalping knife, and to bring in some alive. Proctor, learning this, forbade the ransom of any more prisoners.

9. **The war spirit in Kentucky.**—The troops at Raisin were mainly Kentuckians, and the fatal results of the battle there spread gloom and sorrow throughout the State. This sor-

row was mingled with indignant revenge, when the bloody cruelties of the enemy were recited. On the 16th of February, Governor Shelby called for three thousand men. These were organized into four regiments, under Colonels Boswell, Dudley, Cox and Caldwell, and all placed under the command of General Green Clay. They were marched at once to re-enforce the garrison at Fort Meigs, on the Maumee. Tecumseh having reached Malden with six hundred warriors, Colonel Proctor determined to march against Fort Meigs. On the 28th of April, 1813, the British and Indian allies invested the fort.

10. Dudley's defeat.—Colonel Dudley being sent forward in advance to the relief of Fort Meigs, with eight hundred of General Clay's Kentuckians, was decoyed by the strategy and art of the enemy to attack an outpost across the river from the fort. The Indians, feigning defeat, drew Dudley's men out of reach of support. They then turned upon them from ambuscade in heavy force. The scenes of Raisin were here re-enacted, and nearly the whole command massacred or made prisoners. Less than two hundred got safely back to the fort. Similar cruelties and butcheries were perpetrated upon prisoners by the savages as at Raisin, and under the eyes of Proctor, the British commander. Tecumseh, the Indian chief, finally came forward and compelled the warriors to desist. General Clay reached the fort with a body of his command by cutting his way through the resisting enemy.

11. The British abandon the siege.—A sortie from the fort on the 5th drove back the enemy with severe loss, and on the night of the 8th of May he abandoned his camp and retreated back to Malden. The loss of the Americans during the siege was near eight hundred; that of the enemy five hundred. In July, Proctor again besieged Fort Meigs, with his combined British and Indian army, but was baffled and

defeated in every move, and in a few days withdrew again to Malden.

12. **Repulse at Fort Sandusky.**—On the 2d of August, 1813, thirteen hundred British and Indians, under General Proctor, assaulted Fort Sandusky. Major Croghan, a young Kentuckian of twenty-one years, defended, with a garrison of one hundred and sixty men and one cannon. The besiegers were repulsed and routed with a loss of one hundred and fifty. The loss of the garrison was but eight killed and wounded.

13. **Perry's victory on Lake Erie.**—During the year 1813, a fleet of ships was being built and equipped at Port Erie, to cope with the British naval force on the lake. Commodore Perry was put in command of this fleet in August. A company of one hundred Kentucky riflemen was put on board, as marines and sharpshooters. The two fleets soon met; the American, composed of three brigs, of forty-three guns; five schooners, of twelve guns, and one sloop, of one gun—total, fifty-six guns. The British fleet, of two ships, of thirty-nine guns; two brigs, of twenty guns; one schooner, of seven guns, and one sloop, of three guns—total, sixty-nine guns. The battle raged fiercely for hours, and the afternoon of the same day, Commodore Perry sent the following dispatch to General Harrison: *1113*

UNITED STATES BRIG NIAGARA, September 10, 1813.

Dear General:

We have met the enemy, and they are ours—two ships, two brigs, one schooner and a sloop. Yours,

OLIVER HAZARD PERRY.

14. **Invasion of Canada.**—Colonel Richard M. Johnson, on his return from Congress, raised a regiment of twelve hundred Kentucky cavalry. They were really mounted infantry, as they were armed with muskets, and taught these evolutions in tactics, with the speed of cavalry. They were most

efficiently drilled by James Johnson, a brother of the Colonel, and second in command. His special art of instruction was to drill the men and horses to charge through the lines of the enemy, form in their rear, and fire upon them in flank. On the 27th of September, the army embarked on the fleet of Perry, and was landed four miles below Malden, in battle array, to meet General Proctor's army of British and savage allies. Advancing on Malden, the Americans found it but a mass of smoking ruins, the enemy having retreated up the rivers Detroit and Thames.



COLONEL RICHARD M. JOHNSON,  
THE SLAYER OF THE CHIEF TECUMSEH AT THE  
BATTLE OF THE THAMES, AND VICE-PRES-  
IDENT OF THE UNITED STATES  
AFTERWARD.

15. Battle of the Thames.—General Harrison at once pursued, and on the morning of the 5th of October he overtook them at a point on the river Thames, near the Moravian town. He at once prepared to attack the British and Indian line of battle. Colonel Richard M. Johnson's regiment of mounted infantry was ordered to lead in the attack ; one-half on the British

regulars on the right, and the other half against the Indians on the left, under the celebrated chief, Tecumseh. At the order to charge, the cry was given among the Kentuckians : “Remember Raisin and Revenge !” In rallying echoes, it was repeated along the lines of cavalry : “Remember Raisin and revenge !” The armed horsemen dashed through the lines of Proctor's regulars, halted in their rear, and turned and delivered a deadly fire into their broken ranks. The British bodily threw down their arms and surrendered, General Proctor escaping the avengers by flight on horse-

back. A like charge upon the left was made by the remaining cavalry, and the Indians defeated with great slaughter, and driven from the field. Here the noted leader, Tecumseh, was slain by a pistol shot, at the hands of Colonel Richard M. Johnson.

16. **End of the war in the North-west.**—So gallant and so crushing was the charge of Johnson's mounted Kentuckians, that the battle was fought and won before the main lines of infantry could reach and engage in the scene of conflict. The British allied army was utterly destroyed, and the North-west recovered by the Americans. The Kentucky volunteers were discharged late in the autumn and returned home.

17. **Campaign at New Orleans.**—The reverses met in his later campaigns effected the downfall of Napoleon in Europe, and ended the strife between England and her old enemy for a time. The British forces, military and naval, were now free to be sent against America. A large armament of ships of war, and thirteen thousand veteran troops, sailed for the Gulf of Mexico in September, 1814, to engage in an attempt to capture New Orleans, and to occupy the south Mississippi country. Twenty-five hundred of the detached militia troops of Kentucky were ordered to join the recruits from Georgia and Tennessee, to re-enforce the army of General Jackson for the defense of New Orleans. In one month after, these troops were embarked in flats, and descending the Mississippi.

18. **Defense of New Orleans.**—General Jackson had just removed his headquarters from Mobile to New Orleans, and was rapidly concentrating all his troops there. He began the most active preparations for defense about the 1st of December, and continued them through that month. On the 12th of December, the fleet of the enemy made its appearance in the Gulf, and anchored at Ship Island, off the bay of St.

Louis, to the number of forty sail. Their armed ships were engaged by five American gun-vessels, under command of Lieutenant Jones, in an action of two hours. Several of the British vessels were sunk, and three hundred of the crews killed and wounded; but the superior force of the enemy finally overpowered and captured the little American fleet, on which the loss of life was smaller.

19. **Defenses continued.**—After this advantage, the enemy approached, in light vessels, nearer to the city, through the passages of Lake Borgne and Bayou Bienvenue. Here General Jackson attacked them in force on the 23d of December, and a sharp and bloody engagement took place. A heavy fog and darkness falling upon the armies in the midst of battle, ended the contest without decisive results. The British loss was nearly seven hundred; that of the Americans less than three hundred. General Jackson now determined to fortify his position, act on the defensive, and force the enemy to attack. On the 28th, Sir Edward Packenham, the British commander, made a furious demonstration upon the American works, and finally drew off without a general assault, but with some loss. This demonstration was repeated on the 1st day of January. During the following week General Jackson completed his defenses.

20. **Battle of New Orleans.**—The Kentucky troops, under the command of General Adair, were placed in line with the troops of Tennessee and others, behind the main breast-works, except two hundred, who were detailed to re-enforce the defenses on the opposite side of the river. At the dawn of day, on the morning of the 8th of January, 1815, the glittering lines of the enemy were seen in full force and array, advancing to the assault, and to the final issue of the campaign. With crowded center and wide extended right and left wings, the veteran soldiers of England, with their veteran leaders, who had so successfully fought Napoleon,

bravely and with steady tread advanced upon the covert and silent riflemen of Tennessee, Kentucky and other portions of the West. They approached within easy range, when a storm of fire from the American artillery and a sheet of flame from the rifles of the backwoodsmen swept down the columns of the enemy, and drove them back in disorder. Again their officers rallied, and led them up to the slaughter, and again they were repulsed. A third time

this was repeated, and with such disastrous results that even the veteran soldiers of England could not again be led to the charge. Generals Packenham, Keene and Gibbs, in highest command, had fallen upon the field, with twenty-two hundred others, officers and men, of the British army. The American loss here was but thirteen men. On the opposite side of the Mississippi were about one thousand men of the forces of Jackson. These were driven from their

position with some loss, but the great battle was already decided by the general conflict between the two armies.

**21. End of the second war with England.**—At the final engagement at New Orleans, the English army was estimated at thirteen thousand men; that of General Jackson was composed of about eight thousand. So broken and shattered were the British forces that the commanding officers withdrew and made good their retreat, and soon after embarked upon their fleet. It is a notable fact that a treaty of peace between the English and American governments had been signed before the 8th of January, the date of this bat-



TECUMSEH,  
THE CELEBRATED CHIEF OF THE SHAWANEE  
INDIANS: KILLED AT THE BATTLE OF  
THE THAMES BY COLONEL RICH-  
ARD M. JOHNSON.

tle; but intelligence of the fact was months in reaching the belligerents. Could it have been flashed over the electric wires, or swiftly brought across the ocean by steamship, all the terrible carnage and destruction of the occasion would have been prevented. Peace being restored again everywhere, the Kentucky troops returned to their homes and families, to enjoy a long interval of over thirty years before another war.

---

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

---

### CHAPTER XV.—1812-15.

1. **Second war with England.**—Who was elected Governor in 1812? Why was he chosen then? With what country was war threatened?
2. **Outrages on the high seas.**—From what nations did these occur? What acts of these countries caused injury and insult? What of the blockades by England and France? What did the United States finally do?
3. **War spirit in Kentucky.**—What nation became our ally again? What was the war sentiment in Kentucky? How many troops were called for? What was the quota for Kentucky?
4. **Hull's surrender.**—Who commanded the Kentucky volunteers? Where did they rendezvous? What news came to them at Cincinnati? What was the feeling over Hull's conduct? What did General Taylor refuse to do?
5. **General Harrison takes command.**—What point did he march on from Cincinnati? What checked the campaign? What were the results of it? How many men had Harrison under him?
6. **Battle of Frenchtown.**—Who was in chief command at Maumee? When did the British march on Frenchtown? Who led in the battle there? With what result? What did General Winchester then do? What troops came from Malden?
7. **Massacre at Raisin.**—Who attacked General Winchester here? How was he surprised? What of Colonel Lewis in command?

What was the result of the attack on Winchester? What was the result to the army? How were the prisoners treated?

8. **Cruelty to Prisoners.**—What of the conduct of Proctor and Elliott? How did they treat the prisoners? Who offered rewards for American scalps? Why did Proctor forbid the Indians bringing in prisoners?

9. **The war spirit in Kentucky.**—What feeling did the disaster at Raisin produce in Kentucky? What did Governor Shelby do? Who commanded these Kentucky troops? Where were they at once marched? Who invested Fort Meigs?

10. **Dudley's defeat.**—Where did it occur? How was Dudley decoyed by the enemy? What disaster followed? Who stopped the savage butcheries? What did General Clay do?

11. **The British abandon the siege.**—What caused this retreat? To what place did the British retire? How many Americans were lost at Fort Meigs? How many of the British and their allies? What of the second siege of Fort Meigs?

12. **Repulse at Fort Sandusky.**—By whom was it attacked? When? Who defended the fort? What were the results?

13. **Perry's victory on Lake Erie.**—What force did Perry command? Where were the ships built? How many Kentucky riflemen were on board? How many vessels and guns had Perry? How many had the British? What dispatch did Perry send to Harrison?

14. **Invasion into Canada.**—What troops did Colonel Johnson raise? Who drilled them? What was their efficiency? Where did Perry's fleet land Harrison's army? When? What had Proctor done at Malden?

15. **Battle of the Thames.**—Whither did Harrison follow the enemy? When did he overtake him? What battle was fought? What was the result? What was the battle cry? What became of Proctor? What great Indian chief was killed? By whom?

16. **End of the war in the North-west.**—What became of the British and Indian army? What of the Kentucky volunteers?

17. **Campaign at New Orleans.**—What British troops were sent out? What naval force came with them? How many Kentucky troops were sent to join Jackson's army?

18. **Defense of New Orleans.**—What had General Jackson just done? When did he begin active defense? Where did the British fleet

appear? When? How many vessels composed it? What naval fight occurred? What were the results?

19. **Defenses** continued.—How did the enemy next approach? When did a second battle occur? What stopped the fighting? Who commanded the British army?
20. **Battle of New Orleans.**—Who commanded the Kentuckians? Where was the main body placed? On what day was the battle fought? Who made the attack? How often were the British repulsed? What British commanders fell on the field? What was the loss of the British? What of the Americans?
21. **End of the second war with England.**—What were the relative numbers of the two armies at New Orleans? What did the English army do? What treaty had been signed before this battle? How long was the news coming? What would a knowledge of this treaty have done?

## PERIOD FIFTH.—1816-1860.

FROM THE CLOSE OF THE SECOND WAR WITH ENGLAND,  
TO THE BEGINNING OF THE GREAT WAR OVER THE  
ISSUES OF SLAVERY AND STATE RIGHTS.

---

### CHAPTER XVI.—1816-1846.

PEACEFUL POLITICAL AND CIVIL EVENTS—PRESIDENTIAL AND  
STATE ELECTIONS—FINANCE AND COMMERCE—  
INTERNAL IMPROVEMENTS, ETC.

1. **Thirty years of peace.**—Kentucky had her trials and triumphs through successive wars for forty years, until 1815. We are now introduced to an era of peace, and of political and material progress of thirty years' continuance, to the war with Mexico. Political, social, religious and commercial questions now make up the events of history, in the main. Our Commonwealth had already produced her share of the great and useful inventors of note in industrial history. Of these were John Fitch, who, in 1786, first successfully applied steam as a motor to passenger boats; James Rumsey, who, the same year, propelled a boat on the Potomac with steam; Edward West, who, in 1794, constructed and propelled by steam a model boat on Elkhorn, and who first invented the nail-cutting machine; Thomas H. Barlow, the inventor of the wonderful planetarium, imitating the precise movements of the planets; and William Kelley, who recently died a resident of Louisville, had discovered in 1846 the “Bessemer process for converting pig-iron into steel,” which is now of world-wide fame and use.

2. **The Chickasaw purchase.**—In 1816, George Madison was elected Governor, and Gabriel Slaughter, Lieutenant-Governor, of the State. The former dying, the latter succeeded to his vacancy. The Chickasaw Indians yet owned the territory west of Tennessee river, in both Kentucky and Tennessee, a body of seven million acres of fertile lands. In October, 1818, the general government purchased the title of the Indians for twenty thousand dollars, to be paid in fifteen annual installments. The portion that fell to Kentucky now embraces the counties of McCracken, Marshall, Hickman, Ballard, Carlisle, Fulton, Graves and Calloway, a section yet designated as “The Purchase.” It was not until 1821 that the boundary line between Kentucky and Tennessee was settled.

3. **First banking experiments.**—The first bank of Kentucky was now in good credit. The long wars in Europe, and between England and America, had disturbed all relations of finance and commerce. The sudden return of peace reversed the channels of trade and industry, as well as the uses and methods of finance. Bankruptcy, on an enormous scale, followed over the civilized world. The crisis was made worse in Kentucky by the charter of additional banks, with a total capital of ten millions. In a few months the State was flooded with their doubtful paper. Speculation sprang up, loans were rashly made, and bubbles of enterprise set afloat in every direction. The crash suddenly came, and spread panic and ruin throughout the homes of Kentucky.

4. **“Relief” and “Anti-Relief” issues.**—Now the pressure of insolvency was felt everywhere, and the Legislature of 1819-20 extended the power to replevy for twelve months. The next summer a cry for further relief became overwhelming. Governor Adair and the Legislature, elected in 1820, were pledged to give the people more money, in answer to

this cry. In 1820, the Bank of the Commonwealth was chartered. Specie not being obtainable, its paper was made redeemable in certain public lands, and receivable for public debts and taxes. The private creditor must receive it on its tender, or be replevied for two years. The paper depreciated one-half. Great was the outcry of creditors and capitalists. Greater was the distress of debtors. The measure for relief was the best that could be devised in the absence of a bankrupt law. The Federal courts had obstructed the operations of the State laws. Citizens were divested of their estates, and debtors suffered extremely for misfortunes, and not for crimes; being even placed in prison to the disgrace of our laws. The Relief and Anti-Relief parties formed on the issue. The power to enact such a law being questioned, Judges Boyle, Owsley and Mills decided it unconstitutional, as it interfered with the rights of contracts.

**5. The Old Court and New Court contest.**—An outcry of popular resistance was raised against this decision of the court. In 1824, Joseph Desha and the Legislature were elected by the Relief party on pledges to abolish the court, and annul its decisions. The Legislature had a bare Relief majority, not enough to impeach the judges. It, therefore, repealed the law organizing the existing Appellate Court, and then passed an act organizing the court anew. Judges Barry, Trimble, Haggin and Davidge were appointed the new Court of Appeals. The Old Court refused to regard the act of the Legislature as constitutional, and continued to sit. Frequent cases came up before these opposing tribunals, and the excitement between the parties grew more violent daily. In 1826, an Anti-Relief Legislature was elected, which, on assembling, repealed the act creating the New Court, and left the Old Court in full jurisdiction again, thus ending the strife.

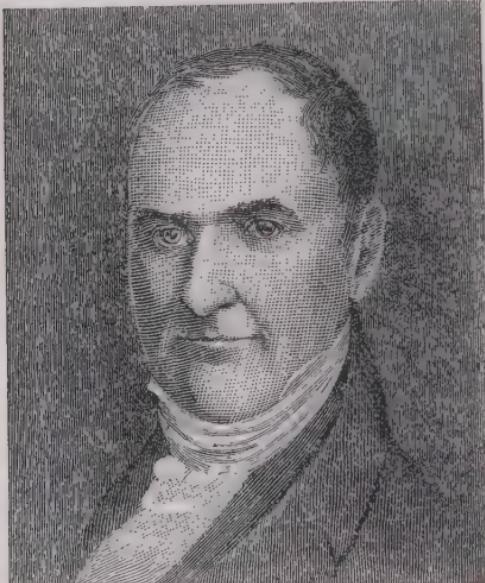
6. **Increase of population.**—The census of 1820 reported the population of Kentucky at five hundred and sixty-four thousand three hundred and seventeen, an increase of more than thirty-six per cent. over that of the former decade. This ranked Kentucky as the sixth State in the Union, as to population. The messages of Governors, and their records of the time, point almost uniformly to propitious seasons and abundant harvests, which rewarded the tillers of the soil and gave general prosperity.

7. **Other industries of Kentucky.**—In 1820, and after, many steamboats, owned by citizens of the State, navigated the Ohio and Mississippi rivers, freighted with commerce for the markets of the world. At this time there were some sixty factories in busy employ at Lexington, and as many at Louisville. Over two millions of dollars of capital were invested in each city in these factories, a large sum for that day. These cities were then industrial centers, and had an ascendancy west of the mountains for many years, but which has not been entirely maintained.

8. **Federal and State jurisdictions.**—Governor Joseph Desha, in his message in 1824, called attention to dangerous Federal innovations upon the rights of the State. Branches of the United States Bank were established within the Commonwealth, and when the Legislature imposed taxes on their property, the Federal courts issued their orders and restrained the collection of the taxes. These banks had acquired property and power in the State, and yet were exempt from bearing their portion of the burdens of government. Governor Desha regretted that the late Court of Appeals of Kentucky had succumbed to this innovation. These banks contended that the State laws were not binding on the Federal courts, and could affect no contract that could be sued on at these tribunals. The power thus assumed the Governor viewed as little short of despotism. He further com-

plained that the occupant laws and other State acts had been disregarded by the Federal courts sitting at Frankfort, and much distress brought upon citizens by their rulings.

9. **National politics in Kentucky.**—In 1824, John Quincy Adams was elected President over General Jackson, by the votes of Henry Clay and his friends. This gave great um-



GOVERNOR JOSEPH DESHA,  
AN EARLY EXPONENT AND DEFENDER OF STATES RIGHTS.  
MAJOR-GENERAL OF THE WAR OF 1812.

brage to the friends of Jackson in the West, and brought about an intense excitement between the two great national parties. In 1828, Jackson and Adams were again the nominees of their respective parties for President. Mr. Clay supported Adams, and the party feeling in Kentucky was bitterly inflamed. In spite of Clay's influence, Kentucky gave eight thousand majority for Jackson, who was

elected President. In 1832, Mr. Clay was selected by the National Republican party as its candidate for President. General Jackson was again nominated by the Democrats, in opposition. After a national campaign of intense partisan crimination and bad feeling on both sides, Jackson was re-elected President, though Kentucky gave to her favorite son a handsome majority.

10. **The three orators of Kentucky.**—Though Henry Clay was conceded the most gifted orator of Kentucky, and, indeed, of his era, yet there appeared upon the arena of the

Commonwealth, in the decade of 1830-40, two persons whose genius, learning and eloquence promised to rival the forensic powers of the Great Commoner. Thomas F. Marshall, of vast and varied learning, and rarely gifted with satire, logic and eloquence, was one of these rivals. But habits of intemperance overcame him, and his life became obscured under the somber clouds of dissipation, and ended in unenviable death. Richard H. Menifee, of Bath county, was the other. He was called the young Patrick Henry of the West, on account of the fervor, passion and magnetic power of his eloquence. Born and reared in poverty, by patient toil and laudable ambition he laid the foundation of fame and success in the early years of manhood, but death ended the career of this brilliant genius at the early age of thirty-two.



RICHARD H. MENIFEE,  
FAMED AS A BRILLIANT YOUNG ORATOR, DIED  
THIRTY-TWO YEARS OF AGE.

11. Internal improvements begun.—In 1830, were begun the first important internal improvements in the State. With aid from the State Treasury, the Maysville, Paris and Lexington turnpike was built. With similar aid, several hundred miles more of macadamized roads were built, connecting Lexington, Danville, Louisville, Bardstown, Glasgow, Bowling Green and other points in the State. In 1833 began the important work of placing locks and dams in Green and Barren and Kentucky rivers. The State afterward also aided in building the railroads connecting Louisville and Lexington. In all her internal improvements, the Commonwealth expended a total of seven millions of dollars.

from 1830 to 1845. The first railroad in Kentucky was built in 1831-1835 from Lexington to Frankfort.

**12. Early religion in Kentucky.**—The Baptist church may justly claim to have been among the first whose pioneer ministers ventured to Kentucky to preach the Gospel. In 1776, we have the first mention of Revs. Peter Tinsley and William Hickman. In 1779, they were followed by Revs. John Taylor, Joseph Reding, Lewis Lunsford, and afterward by Revs. Lewis Craig, John Gano, Ambrose Dudley and others. In 1785, this religious order organized three associations—Elkhorn, Salem and South Kentucky. In 1790, these reported a total of forty-two churches and thirty-one hundred and five members.

**13. Pioneer Roman Catholics.**—From Maryland, mainly, there came to Kentucky several colonies of Roman Catholics. In the lead of these were Doctor Hart and William Coomes, who came early in 1775, tarried some weeks at Drennon Springs, and then removed to Harrod's station. Doctor Hart was the first physician and Mrs. Coomes the first school-teacher, at Harrodstown, and perhaps in Kentucky. They afterward removed to Bardstown. Other colonies settled on Pottinger's creek, on Rolling Fork and on Cox's creek, Nelson county. These were led by Messrs. Hayden, Lancaster, Spalding, Abel, Hill and Miles. From these first settlements, the Catholic membership and churches have extended in many counties of the State, and especially in the cities.

**14. Earliest Methodist ministers.**—The Methodist Episcopal church was itself in the pioneer stage of its great work and organization in Kentucky, in 1783-6. Rev. James Haw and Benjamin Ogden were the first regular itinerant preachers who represented this church in Kentucky. Yet history makes casual mention of the coming of other ministers without the appointment of conference. Among these were Rev.

Francis Clark and John Durham. In 1788, the Lexington and Danville circuits were formed, and within these Revs. Poythress, Williamson, Massey, Snelling, Lee and others preached with great ardor and success. At the close of the year 1788, the membership had increased to eight hundred and sixty-three. In 1790, Bishop Asbury visited Kentucky, accompanied by others, and the labors of these gave great impetus to the cause. The zeal and self-sacrificing labors of its ministry have made of this religious body one of the largest and most powerful in the State.

15. **The Presbyterian church.**—It was represented in early days. Rev. David Rice, an immigrant in 1783, may justly be named as the pioneer founder and promoter of this church in Kentucky. He organized the first congregations at Danville, Cane Run and the Forks of Dix river. Mr. Rice was followed by able associates in the ministry, among whom were Revs. Rankin, Crawford, Craighead, McClure, Templin, Campbell, Blythe, Cameron and others. As early as 1786, the Presbytery of Transylvania, composed of twelve congregations, met in the court-house at Danville. The ministers of this church, from those early days to the present, have been noted for their learning and culture, and this has given great prominence and power to this religious body.

16. **The Christian church.**—The first movement in Kentucky which gathered the elements and prepared the way for the establishment of the Christian church in the Commonwealth was begun about the year 1800, by the preaching of Barton W. Stone and a few associates. Afterward, the preaching and writings of Alexander Campbell made many converts in Kentucky. In many essential points the doctrinal views of Stone and Campbell were found to agree. In 1832, a union between the two bodies was effected by a conference of leading ministers. Since this union, the ministers of the Christian church have preached and labored

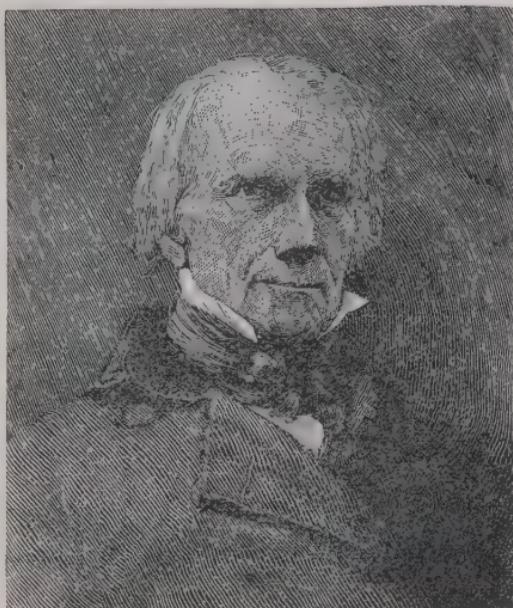
with great success ; and now, the body ranks among the most numerous and influential in the State.

17. **The Cumberland Presbyterian.**—This church came of an independent movement within the Presbyterian church on the part of a number of ministers, who desired to release themselves from the discipline and restrictions of the synod. This movement was led by Revs. Samuel McAdoo, Finis Ewing and Samuel King, who constituted a new and independent Presbytery on February 4, 1810, in the vicinity of Little Muddy, Gasper and Red rivers, near the Tennessee State line. In Kentucky, this church has seven Presbyteries under one synod, and fifteen thousand members.

18. **Kentucky politics and finance.**—In 1836 James Clark succeeded John Breathitt, as Governor of Kentucky ; Charles A. Wickliffe succeeded James T. Morehead, as Lieutenant-Governor, and James M. Bullock succeeded Lewis Sanders, as Secretary of State. Clark dying in 1839, Wickliffe became Governor. From 1838 to 1842, the country underwent a monetary panic which overwhelmed the people with financial distress, greater even than that twenty years before. Depression and depreciation of values spread bankruptcy and ruin in every section.

19. **National and State elections.**—In 1840, General Harrison, the commander of the North-west in the war of 1812-15, was elected President over Van Buren. This was known as the "Hard Cider" campaign, and was conducted with great ardor and enthusiasm. Kentucky gave to Harrison a majority of twenty-five thousand eight hundred and seventy-three, although a favorite son, Colonel Richard M. Johnson, was the Democratic candidate for Vice-President. Robert P. Letcher was this year made Governor ; Manlius V. Thomson, Lieutenant-Governor, and James Harlan, Secretary of State.

20. Henry Clay again a candidate for President.—In 1844, the Whig party nominated Mr. Clay for the Presidency. James K. Polk, of Tennessee, was nominated by the Democratic party, in opposition. The American people were, at this time, greatly excited over the question of the annexation of Texas, which had declared her independence of Mexico, and asked admission as a State into the Union. Mexico still claimed Texas as her province, and threatened war if the United States received her into the Union. Mr. Clay was opposed to annexation, and Mr. Polk in favor of it. Mr. ~~Polk~~ was elected President upon this issue, and Mr. Clay never again sought the office of the Chief Magistracy of the nation.



HENRY CLAY.

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

### CHAPTER XVI.

1. **Thirty years of peace.**—How long was the first war period of Kentucky? How long an era of peace followed? What make up the history of this era? What of Kentucky inventors? What of John Fitch? Of James Rumsey? Of West? Of Barlow? Of Kelly?

2. **The Chickasaw purchase.**—Who was elected Governor in 1816? Who succeeded him? What of the Chickasaw Indians? Who purchased their lands? When? What portion fell to Kentucky? What was this section called? When was the boundary between Kentucky and Tennessee settled?
3. **First banking experiments.**—What of the Bank of Kentucky? What of the financial state of the country? What caused general bankruptcy? What did Kentucky do? What effect had the many banks throughout Kentucky?
4. **Relief and Anti-Relief issues.**—What was done by the next Legislature? What was the cry of the people for? Whom did the Relief party elect? What did the Legislature of 1820-21 do? What was the result of this act? What two parties formed on this issue? Who were the Judges of the Supreme Court at this time? How did these Appellate Judges decide this law?
5. **The Old Court and New Court contest.**—How was the ruling of the court received? What party succeeded in the next election? How did the Legislature try to abolish the court? Who were appointed a new Appellate Court? What did the Old Court do? What were the results? What court prevailed finally?
6. **Increase of population.**—What was the population of Kentucky in 1820? How did it rank with the other States? What of her prosperity then?
7. **Other industries of Kentucky.**—What new agent of commerce appeared? What of the industries at Lexington? At Louisville? What of these cities then, and now?
8. **Federal and State jurisdictions.**—What contest arose over these? What of Governor Desha's warning? What did the Federal Courts assume? What did the State Court concede? What did the banks claim? What of the occupant and other State laws?
9. **National politics in Kentucky.**—Who was elected President in 1824? Who defeated? How did this affect the West? Who were candidates again in 1828? Who was elected? Whom did Mr. Clay support? Who were candidates in 1832? Who was elected?
10. **The three orators of Kentucky.**—Who was the first? Who was the second named? Who was the third named? Describe the qualities of each.

11. **Internal improvements begun.**—At what period? What was the first to receive State aid? What next? What rivers were improved? What railroads? How much did the State expend in fifteen years on these works? When was the first railroad begun and completed in Kentucky?
12. **Early religion in Kentucky.**—What church was first among the pioneers? Who were the first pioneer Baptist preachers? When were their first Associations organized? What were their statistics in 1790?
13. **Pioneer Roman Catholics.**—Who came from Maryland? Who led the first colonists? Where did they locate? What of Doctor Hart? What of Mr. and Mrs. Coomes? Where did other Catholic colonists settle? Who were their leaders?
14. **Earliest Methodist ministers.**—What of the Methodist church at this time? Who were its first ministers in Kentucky? What circuits were formed in 1788? Who preached in them? What Bishop came out in 1790? What numbers had they then?
15. **The Presbyterian church.**—What of David Rice, its pioneer minister? Where did he plant the first churches? Who followed him in this ministry? What of the Presbytery in 1786? What of the Presbyterian ministers?
16. **The Christian church.**—Who first preached its doctrines in Kentucky? In what year did they begin? What of the ministry of Alexander Campbell in this church? When was a union effected between the Christian church and the church of Disciples? What of this religious movement since?
17. **The Cumberland Presbyterian church.**—From what did this body spring? Who were its leaders? When was it first organized? At what points? What numbers in Kentucky?
18. **Kentucky politics and finance.**—What State officers were elected in 1836? What disaster came upon the people in 1838-42?
19. **National and State election.**—Who was elected President in 1840? Who Governor? What was the campaign called?
20. **Henry Clay again a candidate.**—Who were candidates for President in 1844? Who was elected? What was the exciting question of the campaign? What did Mexico threaten? What was Mr. Clay's position on annexation?

## CHAPTER XVII.—1846-50. 17

FROM THE WAR WITH MEXICO TO THE CHANGE OF THE CONSTITUTION.

**1. Agitation of the slavery question.**—In the decade from 1840 to 1850, the agitation of the slavery question became more violent than ever before. The Abolitionists, avowing a law of conscience higher than the civil laws, had grown to be an organized and active minority. They declared an unqualified war upon slavery in the Southern States ; and by the use of money and of systematic agencies, they boldly, but secretly, entered the territory of the Southern States, and induced and aided many slaves to escape from their masters. These were piloted by certain routes and over secret ferries, across the Ohio river, to the North. These routes of flight and refuge were termed “*The Underground Railway.*” The Free-Soilers composed the law-abiding element of the anti-slavery party. They organized into a third national party, and opposed the extension of slavery beyond the boundaries of the States in which it already existed ; and insisted that every new State admitted into the Union should be, in future, free soil.

**2. Agitation in Kentucky.**—There were many citizens of Kentucky dissatisfied with slavery. Cassius M. Clay was the bold and avowed leader of this anti-slavery sentiment. In June, 1845, he published, at Lexington, a paper entitled the *True American*, which he edited with a boldness, reckless of results. The sentiment and interests of the citizens were too powerful to tolerate such a dangerous instrument of disturbance in their midst. In August following, a committee of sixty citizens was appointed, after formal open notice to Mr. Clay to cease the publication of a journal at

war with the peace and safety of society, to take possession of the press and printing apparatus, pack them up, and send them across the Ohio river. This was done, and a committee of sixty were tried on a charge of riot, and a verdict rendered of "*Not Guilty!*"

3. **A war cloud appears.**—Texas, in 1844-5, was seeking admission into the Union against the protest of Mexico, who had not yet conceded her independence. All parties knew that Texas would come in as a slave State, if at all. The Democratic party almost solidly favored her admission, and some Whigs joined that party, in sympathy. The national election, of 1844, decided to admit Texas, at the risk of war. Mexico soon after declared war against the United States. Preparations were promptly made for the American army to invade the territory of Mexico, and General Zachary Taylor, a native of Kentucky, placed in chief command. The troops were landed at Corpus Christi, ~~on~~ the Texas coast.

4. **Invasion of Mexico.**—In March, 1846, General Taylor led his command to Fort Brown, on the Rio Grande, opposite Matamoras. Early in May, he marched with two thousand three hundred men to open communication with Point Isabel, and was met at Palo Alto, on the 8th, by a force of six thousand Mexicans. A fierce battle ensued, in which the Mexicans lost six hundred killed and wounded, and the Americans forty-one. The Mexicans fell back to Resaca de la Palma. Being re-enforced here by two thousand men, they were placed in line of battle to await the advance of General Taylor. A second fight of more stubbornness and carnage ensued. The American loss was one hundred and ten; that of the enemy over one thousand. On the 18th of May, the Mexican garrison abandoned Matamoras without resistance.

5. **Kentucky volunteers.**—Kentucky was called upon for a quota of twenty-four hundred troops to re-enforce General

Taylor's army. Ten thousand citizen-militia eagerly volunteered. The first regiment received was the Louisville Legion, commanded by Colonel Ormsby. The second regiment of infantry, commanded by W. R. McKee, Colonel; Henry Clay, Jr., Lieutenant-Colonel, and Cary H. Fry, Major; and regiment of cavalry, Humphrey Marshall, Colonel; E. H. Field, Lieutenant-Colonel, and John C. Gaines, Major, were next enrolled. Another company, under Captain John S. Williams, was finally accepted. These filled the quota of Kentucky.



GENERAL ZACHARY TAYLOR.  
GENERAL IN THE WAR WITH MEXICO, AND ELECTED  
PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES IN 1848;  
A CITIZEN OF JEFFERSON COUNTY,  
KENTUCKY, FROM 1785 UN-  
TIL HE ENTERED THE  
ARMY.

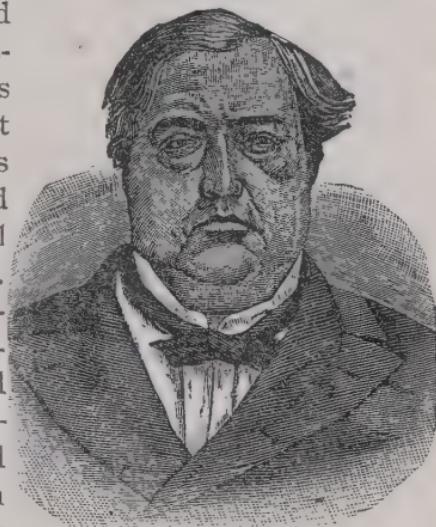
advanced to Saltillo, while the Mexicans fell back upon San Luis Potosi. General Santa Anna was actively preparing an army of twenty thousand men, to march upon General Taylor and crush him with numbers.

7. **Battle of Buena Vista.**—General Taylor, advised of the approach of Santa Anna, led his army forward to a narrow

6. **Capture of Monterey**—General Taylor followed the retreating Mexicans to the strongly fortified city of Monterey, which he invested with his army. In September an assault was made, and the works of the enemy carried by storm. The American loss was five hundred in killed and wounded; that of the enemy much greater, besides the surrender of their army and all their military supplies in the city. Leaving a garrison at Monterey, General Taylor

pass in the mountains, called Buena Vista, and placed himself in position to deliver battle there. On the 22d of February, the army of Santa Anna, twenty thousand strong, was reported advancing in sight. After some skirmish fighting, late in the evening, the soldiers of both armies rested in battle order until the morning of the 23d. The fighting began early and fiercely, and throughout the day it raged, the promise of victory sometimes being to one side, and sometimes to the other. Late in the afternoon, the Mexican forces, being baffled and beaten back in their assaults, retired to their lines at nightfall. At daylight next morning, their camps were found deserted, and General Santa Anna in full retreat toward the capital. The American forces engaged in the battle were forty-eight hundred officers and men, of whom seven hundred and fifty were killed and wounded. The Mexican forces numbered fully twenty thousand men, of whom twenty-one hundred were killed and wounded.

8. **Conquest of Mexico.**—An army of ten thousand men, well equipped, under chief command of General Winfield Scott, was landed at Vera Cruz, on the coast of the Gulf, with orders to march to the City of Mexico. The company of Captain Williams' Kentucky volunteers was accepted in this command, and gallantly fought its way to the end. The sieges and captures of Cerro Gordo, of Contreras and Churubusco; the storming of Molino del Rey and Chapultepec;



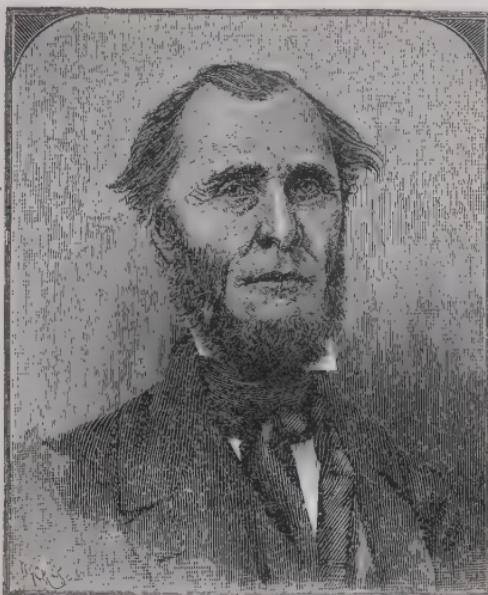
GENERAL HUMPHREY MARSHALL.

the successful assaults upon San Cosme and Belon Gates, and the victorious entrance into the proud City of Mexico, followed each other in orderly succession. A peace was thus conquered within less than two years from the date of the declaration of war.

9. **Treaty of peace.**—Commissioners from the two governments met at Guadalupe Hidalgo, in Mexico, and agreed upon terms of treaty and peace. The Rio Grande river was conceded as the boundary between Texas and Mexico. For the cession of all that part of Mexican territory lying north of a line from El Paso, due west, to the Pacific ocean, the United States agreed to pay Mexico fifteen million dollars. Thus we acquired, by the conquest and purchase, the countries of Texas, New Mexico, Arizona, California, Nevada, Utah and Colorado—in area, a mighty empire of itself, the importance of which we can not estimate. The mineral wealth, the agricultural and live-stock products, and other resources of these States and Territories, affect the markets of the world.

10. **Politics in 1848.**—So much a favorite had General Taylor become with the people, that he was nominated and elected President of the United States by the Whig party, in 1848. Dying July 9, 1850, he was succeeded by Millard Fillmore, Vice-President. In the same year, 1848, John J. Crittenden and John L. Helm were elected Governor and Lieutenant-Governor of Kentucky, upon the Whig ticket. At the same election, the poll for calling a convention to change the constitution of Kentucky resulted in a large majority in favor of so doing. The election for delegates to this convention was held in 1849, and on October first of that year. The members chosen met at Frankfort and drafted a form of constitution, to be submitted to a vote of the people for adoption. It was adopted in 1850, and remains to 1891 the constitution of the State.

11. **Changes by the new constitution.**—Hitherto all judges and county officials were appointed by the Governor, or some other authority. Now they were made elective. On May 12, 1851, James Simpson, Thomas A. Marshall, B. Mills Crenshaw and Elijah Hise were elected judges, and Philip Swigert, Clerk of the Court of Appeals. Twelve circuit judges, twelve Commonwealth's attorneys, and, in each county, a county judge, clerk, attorney, sheriff, jailer, assessor, coroner, surveyor, justices of the peace, and constables were, under the provisions of this instrument, elected by the people.



THOMAS F. MARSHALL.  
ONE OF KENTUCKY'S GREAT ORATORS.

---

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

---

### CHAPTER XVII.—1846-50.

1. **Agitation of the Slavery Question.**—What of its temper at this period? What did the Abolitionists do? In what way did they aid fugitive slaves? What of the Free Soilers party? What did it demand?
2. **Agitation in Kentucky.**—What anti-slavery paper was published in Kentucky? Who published it? What did the citizens of Lexington do? What was the result of their trial?
3. **A war-cloud appears.**—What country threatened war? For what cause? What party favored the annexation of Texas?

Who was elected? Did our government admit Texas to the Union? What did Mexico then do? Who led the army of invasion against Mexico? Where did the army rendezvous?

4. **Invasion of Mexico.**—To what point did General Taylor march? When? Where was the first battle fought? What was the result? Where the second battle? When? What was the result? When did the Mexican army retreat from Matamoras?
5. **Kentucky volunteers.**—For how many was Kentucky called upon? What regiment was first received? Who commanded it? What was the second? Who commanded it? What the third? Who were its chief officers? What separate company was received?
6. **Capture of Monterey.**—To what place did the Mexican army retreat? What did General Taylor then do? What were the losses on each side? To what place did Taylor next march? Upon what place did the Mexicans fall back? What was Santa Anna doing?
7. **Battle of Buena Vista.**—What place did General Taylor select for battle? When did the Mexican army attack him? What was the result of the fighting at Buena Vista? How many men had General Taylor? How many Americans were killed and wounded? How many Mexicans?
8. **Conquest of Mexico.**—Who led the second army of invasion into Mexico? At what point was it landed? How many men composed it? What sieges and battles occurred on the march to the City of Mexico? What befell the Mexican capital?
9. **Treaty of Peace.**—Who negotiated this? Where did they meet? What was made the boundary line of Texas? What territory did the United States purchase from Mexico?
10. **Politics in 1848.**—Who was elected President in 1848? By what party? When did Taylor die? Who became President on the death of Taylor? Who were elected chief officers of Kentucky? When did the people vote to call a constitutional convention? When did this convention meet? Was a new constitution adopted? When did it take effect?
11. **Changes by the new constitution.**—What important change was made in the judiciary? What in county officers? When were these officials first elected by the people? Who were elected to the Appellate bench? What other officers were elected at that time?

## CHAPTER XVIII.—1850-60.

FROM THE ADOPTION OF THE CONSTITUTION TO THE BEGINNING OF  
THE GREAT SECTIONAL WAR.

1. The irrepressible conflict.—The slavery agitation was intensified in Kentucky under the new constitution. The provisions therein, intended to prevent all anti-slavery encroachments, did not repress opposing sentiment and discussion. In 1851, an emancipation ticket, of Cassius M. Clay for Governor, and George M. Blakey for Lieutenant-Governor, received three thousand six hundred and twenty-one votes. Lazarus W. Powell and John B. Thompson were elected over these, and also over the Whig candidates, Archy Dixon and Robert M. Wickliffe. In 1852, Franklin Pierce, Democrat, was elected President over Winfield Scott, Whig. The relations of the political parties, national and State, remained the same until about 1854-56.

(171)



CASSIUS M. CLAY.  
THE CHAMPION ADVOCATE AND LEADER IN KENTUCKY  
FOR THE ABOLITION OF SLAVERY.

**2. The Know Nothing party.**—In 1854, a very singular phase was given to the politics of the country by the organization of a secret party, based on the jealous fear of many native-born citizens against foreigners and Roman Catholics. This outbreak of feeling swept over the country like a wave of fire and involved Kentucky politics and parties in its agitation. In August, 1855, Charles S. Morehead, the Know Nothing or American party candidate, was elected Governor over Beverly L. Clark, Democrat; and James G. Hardy over Beriah Magoffin for Lieutenant-Governor. So intensely bitter were the feelings of animosity aroused even in Kentucky, between the contending parties, that a terrible riot broke out in Louisville on the day of the election, which, for the violence of the mob spirit and the bloody results, caused that day to be known in our history as "Bloody Monday." Fearful scenes were enacted, mainly in the first and eighth wards. Houses were fired and burned, and shots and volleys were exchanged between combatants. Twenty-two persons were killed and many wounded during the day. The phenomenal party met a Waterloo defeat in Virginia, from which it never recovered. It lived over a year, when its organization was broken up, and it ceased to be known in the politics of the country thereafter.

**3. Death of Henry Clay.**—On June 29, 1852, while a member of the Senate of the United States, Henry Clay sank under the ravages of disease and the burden of years, and died in the city of Washington. The event spread a pall of sadness over the entire country, with its deepest shadows upon the hearts of the people of Kentucky. Mr. Clay had been a great partisan leader, and as such he was loved and admired by his friends, while his opponents were compelled to respect his matchless talents and manhood. None questioned his patriotism. At different times of peril to the peace and harmony of the country, the patriot and states-

man rose above the partisan, and Mr. Clay came forward with measures of compromise and conciliation, to still the angry strife and give assurance of continued peace. Now, in his old age, youthful ambition and party passions had died away. He could have no motive in his public life and services but again to serve his country through the great danger which threatened it.

4. **Politics and parties.**—

John C. Breckinridge had risen to eminence, and after the death of Mr. Clay he became the most prominent and favored of the public men of Kentucky. In 1856, he was nominated for Vice-president of the United States on the Democratic ticket, with James Buchanan for President. These were elected. Kentucky gave to the ticket a majority of over six thousand, although being hitherto a Whig State. In 1859, a spirited contest for Governor finally tested the remaining strength of the old Whig party, already in the processes of dissolution. Beriah Magoffin and Lynn Boyd were the nominees of the Democratic party for Governor and Lieutenant-Governor, and Joshua F. Bell and Alfred Allen, of the opposition. After an able and thorough canvass of the State, the Democratic ticket was elected by about nine thousand majority.

5. **Primary schools in Kentucky.**—It is interesting to know how our ancestors, who were the pioneers and the children



GENERAL JOHN C. BRECKINRIDGE.  
VICE-PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES WITH BUCHANAN,  
AND GENERAL IN THE CONFEDERATE ARMY.

of the pioneer settlers, were educated. The first schools were taught in the stockade forts. We read of one taught by Mrs. Wm. Coomes, in 1775, at Harrod's station; another at McAfee's station, in 1777, by John May, afterward killed by the Indians; and a third at Boonesborough, by Mr. Doniphian, in 1779. Later, log cabin school-houses were occupied farther out in the settlements, for convenience. These were subject to Indian incursions, and instances are recorded of teachers being killed, or captured and carried off by the Indians. The school-boys were required to carry their guns with them to school to meet any emergency of danger. School-books were then rare and dear; and often manuscript copies of arithmetic and other text-books were used in the schools, one copy serving for several pupils.

6. **Devices for learning.**—Often the pupils were furnished with a paddle, which had their A B Cs marked upon it, and served a double purpose. From the paddle they went into Dilworth's Speller, and became good boys. Dilworth's Arithmetic was also used, as was Guthrie's Geography. After 1783, we find the Arithmetic of Wm. Horton and Murray's Grammar in the schools. In 1798, two school-books, the Kentucky Primer and the Kentucky Speller, were printed at Washington, the old county-seat of Mason county; and Harrison's Grammar was printed at Frankfort in the same year. The printing of other text-books followed.

7. **Transylvania Seminary.**—It was an important move for education when Virginia, in 1783, endowed Transylvania Seminary by giving it twenty thousand acres of land. The institution was first established near Danville, and continued to be taught there until 1789, when it was removed to Lexington. From this Seminary enterprise grew Transylvania University, which, in after years, under the Presidency of Dr. Holly, rivaled the fame and excellence of Harvard and Yale colleges. Dissension and strife befell its management, and its usefulness was destroyed.

**8. County seminaries.**—In 1798, the Legislature of Kentucky passed an act donating six thousand acres of land to each county, for the purpose of establishing seminaries of learning within the same. The original law guarded well the dispositions of these lands, and the institutions of learning reared under them did much for the education of the people; but subsequent acts vested the trustees with wide powers of disposing of these lands, and thus opened the door for the waste of this valuable endowment by unwise management.

**9. Our common school system.**—Many of the States having received large appropriations of public lands for the benefit of common schools, other States demanded of the Federal government a distribution to them of public lands or money, to equalize the favors of the general government to all alike. An act of Congress was passed distributing a large sum of money to the respective States. Of this sum Kentucky received one million four hundred and thirty-three thousand seven hundred and fifty-seven dollars (\$1,433,757.39). By an act of the General Assembly, February, 1837, eight hundred and fifty thousand dollars (\$850,000.00) of this amount was set apart as a school fund, forever dedicated to founding a system of public schools. In February, 1838, the law passed to establish a system of common schools in Kentucky, drafted by Judge William F. Bullock, a devoted advocate of popular education.

**10. Our common schools before the late war.**—The efforts of the friends of education for years were feebly seconded by legislation, or by public sentiment, and consequently the system languished with uncertain fortunes. A tax of five cents on the one hundred dollars for common school purposes materially increased the school fund in the treasury. Under the superintendency of Dr. Robert J. Breckinridge, 1847-52, the school bonds were restored, after having been burned

and destroyed at the hands of an unfriendly administration, the school system reconstructed, and the common schools put upon a more efficient basis than hitherto. For fifteen years after, but little change was made in the management or fortunes of the system, save by the ravages of war.

**11. Mineral resources of Kentucky.**—The precious metals, such as gold and silver, are not found in the geological formations of Kentucky. But of more value than these are the vast fields of coal and iron which are distributed in different parts of the State. The coal-bed area of eastern Kentucky covers about ten thousand square miles, or one-fourth of the State, comprising bituminous, cannel and splint coals, the latter adapted to making iron and steel. The western coal measures embrace nearly four thousand square miles. The iron ore deposits are of good quality, and the iron districts cover a total of twenty thousand square miles. These deposits of minerals are a source of future wealth to Kentucky, greater than the gold and silver mines of California. These minerals, the timber, the fertile soils, and the genial climate of Kentucky, make it one of the most attractive of the States of the Union.

**12. Stock raising in Kentucky.**—Kentucky is prominent as a stock and cattle-producing State; the thoroughbred horses, beef and milch cattle raised here are exported to all other parts of the United States and to Europe. Its mules supply the home and distant markets; hogs and sheep are reared to some extent, but the latter industry is greatly obstructed by the large number of sheep killed by the dogs that infest the State, a destructive species of costly vermin. The famous bluegrass flourishes nowhere so well as in the pasture lands of our lower silurian limestone. And on no pasture lands is there found a better development of vegetable and animal growth.

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

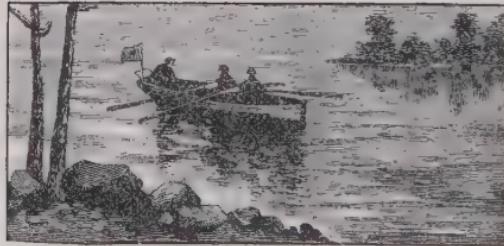
---

### CHAPTER XVIII.—1850-60.

1. **The irrepressible conflict.**—How was the slavery sentiment affected by the new constitution? Who were candidates for Governor in 1851? Who was elected? Who were candidates for President in 1852? Who was elected?
2. **The Know Nothing party.**—When did it spring up? What was its spirit? Whom did this party elect Governor in 1855? What terrible riot did it bring about on election day? What is that day called in our history? Where was the party signally defeated? What then became of it?
3. **Death of Henry Clay.**—When did it occur? Where? What office did he then hold? How did his death affect the people? What are some of his last patriotic deeds?
4. **Politics and parties.**—Who became a prominent leader in Kentucky after Mr. Clay? To what office was John C. Breckinridge elected in 1856? Who was elected President? Who led the contest for Governor in 1859? Who was elected?
5. **Pioneer schools in Kentucky.**—Where were the first schools taught in Kentucky? Who taught at Harrod's station? At McAfee's? At Boonesborough? Where were schools next located? What dangers attended these? What did the boys do for protection? What of school books then? How were these used?
6. **Devices for learning.**—How was the alphabet taught? What books came next? What text-books were used afterward? When were the first text-books printed in Kentucky? Where? What text-book was printed at Frankfort?
7. **Transylvania Seminary.**—When was it endowed? By whom? With what? Where was it first located? Where next? When? What great institution grew out of this? What of it under Dr. Holly, its President? What caused its decline?
8. **County seminaries.**—How were these created? How endowed? When? What became of this endowment?
9. **Our common school system.**—What favors had many States received? What favor did Congress grant Kentucky and other

neglected States? How much was appropriated for common schools in Kentucky by Act of the General Assembly? When? When was the school system established?

10. **Our common schools before the late war.**—What was their condition then? What tax was voted for their benefit? What of the labors of Dr. Breckinridge?
11. **Mineral resources.**—Are gold and silver found in Kentucky? What valuable minerals has the State? What of the coal-beds in Eastern Kentucky? What kinds of coal are found there? What of the western coal-beds? What area of iron ore has Kentucky? What makes ours an attractive State?
12. **Stock-raising in Kentucky.**—What of this industry? What of mules raised in Kentucky? Of hogs and sheep? Why are there not more sheep? What of the bluegrass of Kentucky?



## PERIOD SIXTH.—1860-1891.

### CHAPTER XIX.—1860-1862.

FROM THE OPENING OF THE LATE WAR TO THE FIRST CAMPAIGN  
OF MORGAN'S CAVALRY INTO KENTUCKY.

1. **Forebodings of fated war.**—In 1860, the Republican party, having rapidly increased in numbers and power in the Northern States within the previous four years, nominated Abraham Lincoln and Hannibal Hamlin as its Presidential ticket. The Union party nominated John Bell and Edward Everett; while the Democratic party, divided in twain, put forward as their candidates Stephen A. Douglas and Herschel V. Johnson for the one faction, and John C. Breckinridge and Joseph Lane for the opposition. The result was the election of the Republican candidate by a mainly Northern vote. The outgrowth of sentiment of the anti-slavery party on the one hand, and the jealous protest and warning of the determined defenders of the rights of slavery on the other, had brought the agitation of the slavery issues to that state of resentful feeling which needed but a



ABRAHAM LINCOLN,  
BORN FEBRUARY 12, 1809, IN WHAT WAS THEN  
HARDIN COUNTY, KENTUCKY.

first open insult, or blow given, to soon plunge the entire country into the horrors and carnage of a sectional war.

**2. The war inevitable.**—It was now certain that Lincoln and Hamlin would assume the Presidential offices on March 4, 1861, and install in fullest power a Republican administration, avowedly pledged to restrict the institution of slavery within existing limits. It was alleged by many opposing leaders, that the anti-slavery sentiment was growing boldly aggressive, and that it would continue its encroachments until nothing would satisfy its demands less than the total extinction and abolition of slavery. Whether right or wrong, it was affirmed that this result would be attempted. The opposing party with its leadership and elements of strength, now mainly in the Southern States, insisted that the final stand for the protection and local control of these States' rights must be made now, or never, even at the hazard of a terrible war, and the risk of their property in slaves.

**3. State politics in 1861.**—At the date of the inauguration of the Republican administration, the State officials of Kentucky and the Legislature were Democratic. The latter body had recently elected John C. Breckinridge United States Senator. It was a question yet in the scales of doubt, whether a majority of citizens were in favor of the Union or in sympathy with secession. The pledges of political faith and duty were with the Union, but many felt there was doubt of sympathy or interests in common with the North. Her ties of kindred and institutions were with the Southern States, about to sever their relations with the old government. Many looked at the strife as unnatural, and shrank from it with the dread of fratricide.

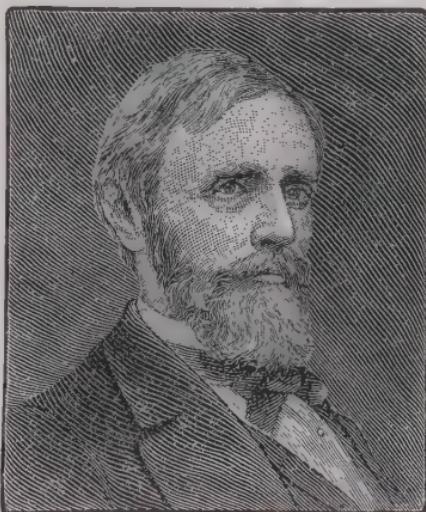
**4. Position of neutrality.**—Many leading statesmen of Kentucky counseled together, and determined that the State would neither secede with her sister States of the South, nor join the Northern States in an attempt to coerce the oppos-

ing States of the South into forced submission to the authority of the United States government. She forbade either combatant, North or South, to invade her soil, under threat of armed resistance. If any of her own citizens wished to take up arms for the one side or the other, they must go beyond her borders, into the ranks of the army with which they might wish to cast their fortunes. In the meantime, Senator Crittenden on the floor of Congress made every overture and effort to effect a peaceable compromise between the contending sections and to stay the carnage and ruin that threatened to follow in the track of war.

**5. The Confederate government.**—On the 4th of March, 1861, Lincoln and Hamlin were inaugurated President and Vice-President of the United States. South Carolina seceded December 20, 1860, and announced her withdrawal from the Union.

The States of Mississippi, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, Florida, North Carolina, Tennessee, Arkansas, Texas and Virginia followed her example. Delegates from these met in convention and formed a new constitution, under the style of the Confederate States. Jefferson Davis was elected President, and Alexander H. Stephens Vice-President of the same. The capital of this government was first Montgomery, Alabama; afterward Richmond, Virginia.

**6. The first gun fired.**—On the 12th of April, 1861, General Beauregard ordered the Confederate batteries in front of



JEFFERSON DAVIS,  
PRESIDENT OF THE CONFEDERATE STATES,  
BORN IN TODD COUNTY, KENTUCKY,  
JUNE 3, 1808.

the city of Charleston to open fire on Fort Sumter. General Robert Anderson, of the United States army, was in command of the fort, and did all that could be done for its defense. On the 13th, after thirty hours of fierce bombardment, the fort surrendered. The startling news flashed over the wires to every part of the country, and aroused the spirit and passions of the belligerent sections beyond all control. The storm of war swept like a resistless cyclone over all parts of the sundered Union.

7. **Putting down the war.**—President Lincoln at once called for seventy-five thousand troops to put down the war of sections. He telegraphed the Governor of Kentucky to furnish four regiments. The reply was as follows:

FRANKFORT, KY., April 15, 1861.

*Hon. Simon Cameron, Secretary of War:*

Your dispatch is received. In answer, I say, emphatically, Kentucky will furnish no troops for the wicked purpose of subduing her sister Southern States.

B. MAGOFFIN, *Governor of Kentucky.*

A similar refusal was made on call of the Confederate States government for Kentucky troops. The most strenuous efforts were now made to preserve the neutral position of Kentucky, yet there were extremists on both sides who were ready to renounce neutrality.

8. **Military position of Kentucky.**—The militia who were called into service to preserve neutrality were armed and equipped, but divided into two classes—the State Guards, who at once went into camp service; and the Home Guards, who were held in reserve. It was well understood that the former were inclined to the cause of the South, and the latter to the Union. Recruits in squads and companies moved out to join the Confederate ranks. General Nelson made a recruiting station at Camp Dick Robinson, in Garrard

county, enlisting volunteers from all the adjacent country for the Union army. The authorities on both sides were found to approve, and to aid in the movements. The mask of neutrality proved but a thin disguise for a transient purpose. Faith could no longer be kept by the one party, when disregarded by both. Each belligerent wished it broken.

**9. Battle of Manassas.**—On the 21st of July, the main armies of the great opposing sections met in battle array on the plains of Manassas, in Virginia. The signal defeat, the panic that followed and the hasty retreat of the Union forces back toward Washington were the result. The news electrified the country. Neither party could now recede or compromise. The North, now stung with defeat, must retrieve her honor and her fortunes ; the South, flushed with victory, would listen to nothing but a severance of the Union, which her enemy would never admit. The sympathizers of either side in Kentucky, now that neutrality was abandoned, were openly or secretly volunteering and flocking to the camps of the respective armies by the hundreds and thousands.

**10. Battle of Belmont.**—Neutrality having been broken in Kentucky, steps were taken to augment and organize the Union forces at once. General Robert Anderson was called to take command of the Department of Kentucky. In September, the Legislature directed the Governor to call out forty thousand Kentuckians to hold the State against the invasion of the Confederates. A large Confederate force, under General Polk, occupied and fortified Hickman and Columbus on the 3d of September, 1861. Two days after, the Federal army in force occupied Paducah and other points in Kentucky. On the 6th of November General Grant with a land and naval force left Cairo to attack General Pillow. A severe battle ensued at Belmont, nearly

opposite Columbus, resulting in the repulse of the Federal forces, with a loss of one thousand men killed, wounded and prisoners. The Confederate loss was six hundred and forty.

**11. Both armies occupy Kentucky.**—The main armies of both combatants confronted each other in Kentucky. The Confederates, under the chief command of General Albert Sidney Johnston, held headquarters at Bowling Green, and detachments of troops at the fortified points of Hopkinsville, Fort Donelson, Fort Henry and Columbus, on the west, and also at Cumberland Ford, on the east. General Buell was in chief command of the Federal army, now increased to seventy-five thousand men, and menacing the Southern army at every point. Each side was busied during the autumn months in recruiting men, and in supplying arms and munitions of war. Severe skirmish fighting took place at Wild Cat mountain, at Ivy mountain, at Hazel Green and at other points.

**12. The horrors of war.**—The distresses and horrors of war were now widespread over the land. In the divisions of sentiment and feeling, households were sundered. Very often the father went one way and the sons another; families, churches, friendships, kinships, all seemed to have no influence on the way men went. With disorderly license, which showed little respect for civil or moral laws, the unbridled passions of bad men led to wanton murders, robberies, and outrages, which were not so much as thought of in times of peace. It was as though the furies of malice, revenge, hatred and violence were let loose upon our society at once. Much of this lawlessness came from the Home Guards, a local sort of military police, armed at the same time with the State Guards, but kept at home around the towns and neighborhood centers. While there were many good men in these organizations, there were enough of the shiftless and lawless elements which infest every place to

bring this class of the military arm into unsavory repute. These and the Guerrillas from the Confederate ranks show that social disorder and brutal violence are incidents of military license in times of war, and especially of civil war.

**13. Military arrests and banishments.**—Many leading citizens of the State, in sympathy with the Southern cause, but not in military ranks, were arrested and sent off to prisons at different points in the Northern States, by the military authorities. On the 18th of November an assemblage of Southern Rights' citizens of Kentucky, within the Southern military lines, met at Russellville and set up the frame-work of a State government under the Confederate Constitution. George W. Johnson was named Governor. This was in the expectation that the entire State might, after awhile, be occupied by the Confederate armies.

**14. Battle of Mill Spring.**—On the 19th of January, 1862, General George B. Crittenden, with the Confederate command of five thousand men, engaged General George H. Thomas, in command of about the same number of Federal troops, at Mill Spring, in Pulaski county, in a fierce battle. General Zollicoffer, second in command of the Confederates, having been killed by a pistol shot from Colonel Speed S. Fry, and the Federals being finally re-enforced, the Confederates were defeated and driven back upon their camp, retreating into Tennessee. The killed and wounded on each side were over three hundred. This was a severe blow to the Southern army, as it left General Johnston without support upon his right, from Bowling Green to Cumberland Gap. An invasion of Tennessee from this quarter was now practically open to the Federal army.

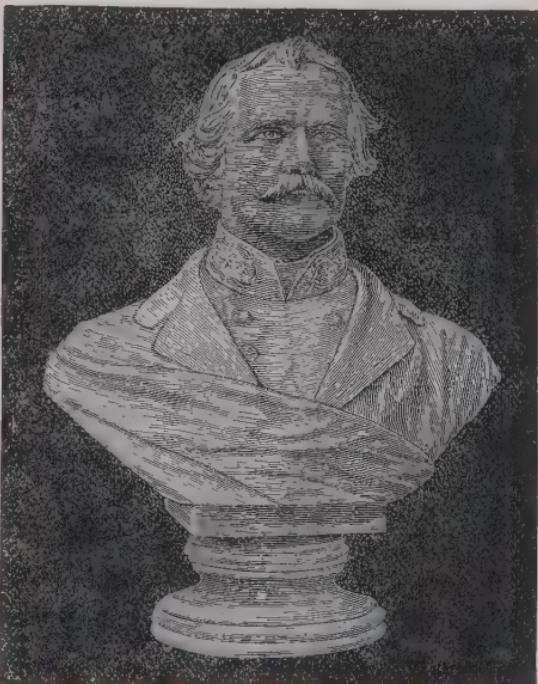
**15. Battles of Forts Henry and Donelson.**—General Buell had, in December, 1861, sixty thousand men under command, holding in check the Confederate forces of General Johnston at the several points of concentration. Besides

this formidable Union force, General Grant held sixteen thousand five hundred at Cairo, and General Smith nearly seven thousand at Paducah. Opposed to them, General Johnston had at command about forty thousand well-armed troops, over half of whom were at Columbus and Forts Donelson and Henry. On the 6th of February, 1862, the Federal plan was made known by the assault upon, and capture of, Fort Henry, on the Tennessee river, after a terrific bombardment by seven gun-boats, with some fifteen thousand troops under General Grant, borne up on transports. A third disaster was soon to follow. In less than one week, General Grant, in command of over thirty thousand men, supported by six gun-boats, passed up the Cumberland river to Fort Donelson, near the Tennessee line. This place was defended by fifteen thousand Confederate troops, under Generals Floyd, Pillow and Buckner. For four days the fighting was heavy, and with severe losses to both sides. Unable to defend longer, Floyd and Pillow withdrew small detachments of the Confederate forces, and escaped at night. The remainder of some twelve thousand men were surrendered by General Buckner to General Grant the next day. Thus was opened by the gateways of the two rivers, an easy entrance of the Federal army into Tennessee and the South.

**16. Capture of Nashville.**—Nashville now lay open to the approach of the Federal army, by land and river; and over one hundred and twenty-six pieces of artillery were moved southward by General Buell. On the 25th, they entered Nashville. On the 14th of February, Bowling Green had been evacuated, and on the 27th, the stronghold of Columbus was abandoned by General Polk, to the advance of the victors. General Johnston, in retreat through the midwinter storm of wind and ice, passed through Nashville in advance of the Federals; and from thence to Murfreesboro, where he was joined by the forces of General Crittenden. Both armies

moved southward again, to meet soon in the shock of battle on the plains of Shiloh.

17. **President Lincoln's proposal.**—On the 6th of March, 1862, President Lincoln sent into Congress a special message asking the passage of an act: "That the United States ought to co-operate with any State which may adopt a gradual abolition of slavery, giving to such State money to be used to pay for losses or injuries from such change of system." No party or public man of Kentucky or the South would accept pay for slaves freed now—from pride, or principle, or other motive. The slave property of Kentucky was valued at one hundred millions of dollars;



GENERAL ALBERT SIDNEY JOHNSTON.

all this was lost within three years afterward, by the proclamation freeing the slaves, and the effects of war.

18. **The battles in the South.**—The two great armies moved in parallel lines southward through Tennessee, aiming at such strategic advantages as they might be able to employ. They met on the field of Shiloh, and one of the bloodiest contests of the war was there fought out and protracted for two days. On the first day, General Grant's army was defeated by the Confederates, under General Johnston. Re-

enforced at night, by twenty-five thousand men under General Buell, the Federals attacked again the next day, and compelled their enemy to retreat from the field. Heavy engagements followed after, at Corinth, and at Iuka, at Baton Rouge, and other points, with frequent skirmish battles in the South, until the return of the two armies into Kentucky, late in August, 1862. We can not follow the military operations and results into distant States, but must confine our narrative to Kentucky, and to the part played by her troops on either side in the desolating war. In the campaigns and battles mentioned, many Kentucky troops fought and marched, on each side, with a gallantry worthy of the fame and deeds of their ancestry.

**19. Morgan's Cavalry.**—An arm of service was now in training, and soon was actively in the field, which became afterward one of the most famous and effective, for its numbers, of any that took part in the war on either side. Late in 1861, the authorities in Kentucky ordered the State Guards, known to be in sympathy with the Southern cause, to disarm. Captain John H. Morgan, in command of a company well armed and drilled at Lexington, Kentucky, secretly moved out through the Federal lines to join the fortunes of the Southern army, at Bowling Green. Several other Kentucky companies united with Morgan's, forming what was known as "Morgan's Squadron." On the Union side a large contingent of cavalry forces was recruited. This arm of the service was mainly held for the defense of the State under the brave and gallant leadership of Kentuckians, such as Wolford, Jacob, Shackelford, Hobson, Murrey, Jackson, Starling, Ward, Garrard, Fry and others. It became one of the most noted and efficient bodies of troop in the Federal service. The men of both forces were skilled in arms and in horsemanship.

**20. Morgan's first raid.**—With a force of over eight hundred finely mounted and well-armed men, and two howitzers,

General Morgan entered Kentucky early in July, 1862. Defeating Major Jordan, at Tompkinsville, he passed on through Glasgow to Bear Wallow. Here the telegraph station was seized, and Ellsworth, an expert operator on Morgan's staff, tapped the line between Louisville and Nashville. This was repeated at several stations afterward, and the Federal authorities along the lines and at headquarters were deceived and disconcerted as to his route and movements in Kentucky. The Federal garrison at Lebanon was next captured. Morgan then moved on through Springfield, Harrodsburg, Lawrenceburg and Versailles to Midway, with skirmishes and adventures along the route. The telegraph was seized and used again at Midway, with the same misleading effects. The main body of the Confederate cavalry next captured Georgetown, and, after a feint on Lexington, marched upon Cynthiana, where a Federal force of several hundred men under Colonel J. J. Landrum was captured after a severe and bloody engagement. The Federal forces being gathered in hot pursuit, General Morgan rapidly moved out of the State through Paris, Winchester, Richmond and Somerset.

---

#### PERIOD SIXTH.—1860-1891.

#### TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

##### CHAPTER XIX.—1860-62.

1. **Forebodings of war.**—Who were Presidential candidates of the Republican party in 1860? Who of the Union party? Who of the two wings of the Democratic party? What ticket was elected? What was the feeling on the slave issue?
2. **The war inevitable.**—What was now certain? What was the administration pledged to do? What was the temper of the Southern people? What did they threaten to do?

3. **State politics in 1861.**—What party was in power in Kentucky? Who was elected United States Senator? How did Kentucky stand on the war issue? What was the feeling toward the South?
4. **Position of neutrality.**—What did the leaders determine to do? What was neutrality? What did Senator Crittenden do?
5. **The Confederate Government.**—When was Lincoln inaugurated? What action did South Carolina take? What States followed her example? What did delegates from these do? Who was elected President and Vice-President of the Confederacy? Where was its first capital? Where the second?
6. **The first gun fired.**—Where was this done? When? Who commanded the Confederates? Who Fort Sumter? What was the result of the bombardment? What effect did the news have over the country?
7. **Preparing for the issue of war.**—What did President Lincoln do? How many troops did he call from Kentucky? What did Governor Magoffin do? How did he answer the Confederate demand?
8. **Military position of Kentucky.**—What was done to protect her neutrality? What bodies of troops were armed? Which body favored the South? Which the Union? Which party first violated neutrality? What recruiting camp was formed?
9. **Battle of Manassas.**—When was it fought? Where? By whom? What was the result? How did this affect the North? How the South? What did the volunteers from Kentucky do?
10. **Battle of Belmont.**—Who was appointed commander in Kentucky? How many Union troops were called out? What Confederate force occupied Kentucky? What force occupied Paducah? What move did General Grant make? When? Where did he attack General Pillow? What was the result?
11. **Both armies occupy Kentucky.**—Who commanded the Confederate army? Where were his headquarters? Where were other Confederate troops stationed? Who commanded the Federal army? What were its numbers? What skirmish battles took place?
12. **The horrors of war.**—How did war affect the people of the State? Whom did it divide? What outrages were suffered by the people? From what source did these come in part? What lawless men came from the Confederate ranks afterward?

13. **Military arrests and banishments.**—Who suffered these? To what prisons were they sent? Where did the Kentucky Confederates meet to form a State government? When? Who was made Governor? With what view?
14. **Battle of Mill Spring.**—When was it fought? Who commanded the Confederates? Who the Federals? What Confederate officer was killed upon the field? By whom? What were the results of the battle? What advantages did the Federals gain?
15. **Battles of Forts Henry and Donelson.**—What army had Buell in December? How many Federals were at Cairo and Paducah? What numbers had the Confederates? By whom was Fort Henry attacked? When? With what forces? What was the result? Who led the attack on Fort Donelson? With what forces? What was the Confederate strength? What Generals were in command? How long did the fighting continue? Who retreated at night? What did General Buckner do?
16. **Capture of Nashville.**—What was the situation of Nashville then? What army did General Buell lead against it? When did he enter the city? When did General Johnston retreat? To what place? When was Columbus abandoned? What did both armies next do?
17. **President Lincoln's proposal.**—What was this proposal? When was it made? How was it received? What was the value of slave property in Kentucky?
18. **The battles in the South.**—Where did the two armies next meet in battle? What was the result of the first day's fighting? What of the second day's? What other battles followed? What of the Kentuckians in those armies?
19. **Morgan's cavalry.**—What company did John H. Morgan lead out to the Confederates? What were the State Guards ordered to do? What of Morgan's Squadron? What opposing cavalry was raised? Who led these? What of them?
20. **Morgan's first raid.**—When did he first invade Kentucky? With how many troops? Whom did he first attack? What route did he take? What use was made of the telegraph? Who were misled by these dispatches? From Lebanon, what route did he take? What did he do at Midway? What route did he take from Midway? What severe battle was fought? Who commanded the Federals at Cynthiana? Where did Morgan go thence? Who hurried his retreat from the State?

## CHAPTER XX.—1862-65.

FROM THE INVASION OF KENTUCKY BY THE CONFEDERATE  
ARMY UNDER GENERAL BRAGG, TO THE CLOSE  
OF THE WAR.

1. **Martial law in 1862.**—General Jerry T. Boyle was made chief commandant in Kentucky, June 1, 1862, with headquarters at Louisville. By orders from Mr. Stanton, Secretary of War at Washington, a more stringent and arbitrary policy was enforced in Kentucky. Recruits, with aid and comfort, were being secretly and actively supplied to the Southern arms from Kentucky by the sympathizers with the Southern cause. The Union authorities were put to the severest strain of aggressive and defensive war. Union provost-marshals were appointed in every county. All



GENERAL JERRY T. BOYLE.

who had given aid to the Confederates or gone beyond the lines were required to take the oath of allegiance and give bond. Any future violation was to be dealt with according to military law. If the property of loyal citizens should be taken or injured by raiding bands of Confederates, the Southern Rights' citizens should be assessed and made to pay the damages. Many were arrested and sent off to prison under

these orders ; yet they were enforced, generally with as much leniency as could be exercised by the higher official. In some instances lawless men took advantage of them to injure and annoy, and these brought into some bad repute the entire cause and its authority.

**2. Resignation of Governor Magoffin.**—Governor Magoffin was not in sympathy with coercive war measures ; and, while conforming his acts to the constitution and laws, he felt compelled often to obstruct the will of the Union majority in the Legislature, and to weaken the military arm by refusal to co-operate. This made his position most unpleasant to both parties, and on the 18th of August, 1862, he resigned his office. James F. Robinson was elected to fill his vacancy, a steady and consistent Union man ; thus the civil authorities of the State were put in complete accord with the military.

**3. Battle of Richmond.**—An army of forty-five thousand Confederates was organized for the invasion of Kentucky, with headquarters at Chattanooga, and under chief command of General Bragg. General Kirby Smith, in command of the east division of fifteen thousand troops, suddenly entered Kentucky through Big Creek Gap, leaving five thousand to guard the re-enforced Cumberland Gap ; and, by swift march through the mountains, attacked the Federal force of ten thousand men under the command of General Nelson, at Richmond, Kentucky. Heavy fighting, with severe carnage on both sides, ensued on the 30th day of August, 1862. The Federals were defeated and routed with a loss of over five thousand, including prisoners. The Confederate loss was nearly eight hundred killed and wounded. The remaining Federal forces, east of Louisville, hastily retreated across the Ohio river, and left the State almost entirely in the hands of the Confederates.

**4. Bragg's invasion of Kentucky.**—General Bragg moved out from Chattanooga with his main army of thirty thou-

sand men, and, by a swift march through Sparta, Tennessee, attempted to prevent General Buell, yet in command of the Federal Army in middle Tennessee, from falling back on his base of supplies at Louisville. About the 15th of September, General Bragg reached Munfordville and captured the fortified heights at Green river, with the garrison of about four thousand troops. General Buell lay in his rear toward Bowling Green, with his passage to Louisville entirely obstructed. It was thought by the men of both parties that General Buell would now be forced to battle under such disadvantages as would cause his defeat, and probably the capture of his army. It was a gloomy day for the Union cause, with news of Pope's defeat on the Potomac added.

**5. Bragg's retreat and failure.**—To the surprise of the public, General Bragg retreated from his position of advantage, toward Frankfort, Kentucky, and allowed Buell to march on to Louisville without firing a gun. At once the Federal authorities began to re-enforce General Buell's army to one hundred thousand men. The Federal commander now took the aggressive, and marched in the direction through Bardstown toward Springfield, to engage the Confederate forces. General Bragg had effected a union with the divisions of Kirby Smith, swelling his total force to nearly fifty thousand men. Many skirmish battles took place between detachments of troops and scouting parties on either side, but none of importance to affect the strength of either army. Among these was a repulse of a body of Texas rangers at Falmouth; some sharp fighting at Owensboro and at Shepherdsville; the capture of one hundred and fifty Federals at New Castle; the engagement of General Duke at Augusta; the attack of the Confederates on General Buell's army at Bardstown; the battle at Lawrenceburg between a Confederate regiment and a Federal regiment of cavalry; the capture of the 78th Indiana regiment near Bardstown.

On the 4th of October, the forms of inaugurating Richard Hawes Governor of Kentucky, as a Confederate State, were just concluded as the rear guard of General Smith's army retired from the place, and in sight and hearing of General Dumont's Federal cannon.

6. **Battle of Perryville.**—Generals Bragg and Buell each seemed to be misled and confused as to the plans of campaign and movements of the other. While the main body of Bragg's army was held north of the Kentucky river, and the main body of the Federals were at Springfield and vicinity, the left wing of fifteen thousand Confederates prematurely engaged some advanced corps and divisions of the Federal army, of twenty-five thousand men, at Perryville, Kentucky. Here for four hours was fought one of the fiercest and bloodiest battles of the war. The loss of the Federals was over forty-three hundred in killed and wounded; that of the Confederates thirty-four hundred. The results were indecisive.

7. **Bragg's retreat from Kentucky.**—The next day General Bragg fell back ten miles to Harrodsburg, where General Smith joined him, making the concentrated Confederate army forty-five thousand strong. The remaining corps of General Buell's forces coming up, he led forward his combined army of fifty-four thousand Federals. The two armies thus confronted each other near Harrodsburg, but two miles apart. It was believed that a great battle was certain, but General Bragg again ordered retreat, and fell back on his base at Bryantsville, from whence he retreated into Tennessee. Kentucky was now, and for the future, left to Federal control.

8. **Campaigns outside of Kentucky.**—Over fifty thousand Kentuckians were enlisted in the Union army, and near twenty thousand in the cause of the Confederacy. These were now with the great armies in their movements and cam-

paigns over the Southern States. Old neighbors, kinsmen and friends from childhood, confronted each other in the great battles of Chickamauga, Mission Ridge, Lookout mountain, Kenesaw mountain, Vicksburg, Franklin, Nashville and on other fields in the march of Sherman to the sea. But few

Kentuckians were with the armies on the Potomac, where the bloody battles of Gettysburg, Bermuda Hundred, Drury's Bluff, the Wilderness, Cold Harbor, Petersburg, Winchester and Cedar Creek marked the features of the desolating war.



GENERAL ROBERT ANDERSON.

bethown, and capturing the garrison there, he pushed on to Muldraugh's Hill, where he burned the trestle and destroyed the track of the railroad, besides several important bridges, before returning to Tennessee. The Federals now began to imitate the tactics of Morgan, and their armed bodies of cavalry became very effective in their operations outside and within the Confederate lines; especially with the mounted Kentuckians on the Federal side, not only in beating back the Southern raiders from the State, but in bold raids far into Southern territory.

10. **Proclamation of freedom.**—On the 1st of January, 1863, President Lincoln issued a proclamation declaring free all slaves in the seceded States, and ordering the military authorities to recognize and maintain their freedom. This

9. **Morgan's brief raid.**—Late in December, 1862, General Morgan, at the head of three thousand mounted men, entered Kentucky. Passing through Glasgow and Eliza-

measure was in form, worded only to affect the right of property in slaves in the eleven States in open resistance; yet its practical effects were plainly seen to be as destructive to the institution in Kentucky. This step on the part of the President, together with some extreme acts of military usurpation, gave great offense to a large portion of the Union party in the State, and led to open protest and withdrawal of support by many. The military powers, however, were too strongly established for this opposition to avail much.

**11. Skirmish battles in Kentucky.**—In the spring of 1863, bodies of Confederate cavalry entered Kentucky and raided through the interior. In March, Colonel Cluke's cavalry,

a part of Morgan's command, defeated and captured five hundred Federals at Mt. Sterling, with a large amount of stores. Three days after, General Pegram drove back Wofford's cavalry with some loss, and occupied Danville. Some fighting occurred between General Marshall's forces and General White's Federal troops, ten miles from Louisa, causing the latter to fall back. On the 30th of March, Colonel Walker's Kentucky cavalry defeated Colonel Cluke, near Mt. Sterling. On the same day, General Gilmore defeated Pegram's Confederate cavalry with severe loss. On May 11th, the 9th Kentucky cavalry was defeated with some loss by a part of Morgan's command, in Wayne county. Colonel Everett's Confederate cavalry, after several skirmishes in



GENERAL JOHN H. MORGAN.

Mason and Fleming counties, was defeated near Morehead by a mounted regiment of Kentucky troops, with a loss of forty men.

**12. Morgan's campaign across the Ohio.**—In the month of June, 1863, General Morgan, with twenty-five hundred cavalry, again invaded Kentucky. Crossing Cumberland river near Burkesville, and repelling a body of Federal cavalry at Marrowbone, he moved on through Columbia toward Lebanon. At Green river bridge a detachment met a Federal regiment under Colonel Moore, entrenched in the bend of the river. A battle and repulse ensued, with a loss of one hundred to the Confederates, among whom were Major Chenault and Colonel Brent, killed. Three Federal regiments were defeated and captured at Lebanon. Passing on through Nelson and Meade counties, Morgan crossed the Ohio at Brandenburg, hotly pursued by Bristow, Hobson and Shackelford. His invasion through Indiana and Ohio created the wildest excitement. His route was by Corydon, Salem, Vienna, Paris, Versailles and Harrison, to the rear of Cincinnati. By this time the whole country adjacent was aroused, and thousands of Federal troops were in pursuit. Going on eastward, he passed Decatur, Piketon and Jackson, to Portland, on the Ohio river. Unable to effect a crossing here, he moved up to Pomeroy under continued fire and harassment from his pursuers. The Federal gun-boats now coming up the river, he was compelled to surrender to the Kentucky cavalry, which followed to the end.

**13. Imprisonment and escape of Morgan.**—General Morgan, Colonels Duke, Ward, Smith, Morgan and Hoffman, Majors Elliott and Bullock, and Captains Hines, Thorpe, Sheldon and others were imprisoned in the penitentiary of Ohio, at Columbus. In November, a plan of escape was conceived and carried out under the lead of Captain Hines. A passage way was dug through the floors and under the walls

of the prison. On the 28th of November, General Morgan and Captains Hines, Bennett, Sheldon, Hockersmith, McGhee and Taylor crept safely through and made their escape.

**14. Morgan's career and death.**—General Morgan, having lost his army, was rather in disfavor at the Confederate capital afterward. He did not receive another command until the spring of 1864. In June of that year he again invaded Kentucky through Pound Gap, with twenty-five hundred men. He met with some successes in the capture of Mt. Sterling, Lexington, Georgetown and Cynthiana. The Federals being finally re-enforced, Morgan suffered severe losses, and was compelled to hastily retreat from Kentucky with the remnants of his army. Operating in East Tennessee in the vicinity of Greenville, he was, on the 3d of September, 1864, betrayed by a female enemy to the Federals from a motive unknown. At daylight the enemy entered the town, aroused him from his bed and shot him to death on the premises where he was making his headquarters.

**15. Military changes in Kentucky.**—At the election in August, 1863, polls were guarded by the soldiers, and the Union candidates were elected, with little contest. Thomas E. Bramlette was elected Governor. General Boyle having resigned as commandant, the military control of the State fell into the hands of some of the officials, whose cruelties and corruptions established a reign of terror throughout the Commonwealth for the next two years. For the first time, orders were issued for the enlistment of colored troops in Kentucky. At first much opposition was made to this policy, but in vain; and all came to tolerate what they could not help. Heavy drafts of men were being made to recruit the Federal army, and many slaves were sold to become substitutes to men who were drafted but did not wish to enter the service.

**16. Guerrilla bands.**—From out of the ranks of the Confederate army, there were banded together some very lawless and desperate men, known as "guerrillas," who, defying all the rules of civilized warfare, gave themselves up to deeds of violence, to pillage and to indiscriminate outrages. Banks, stores, residences and persons were robbed with ruthless hands. Their violence and wanton deeds spread terror through the country more than did the marching and counter-marching of the great armies of both combatants over the territory of the State. The Confederate government felt itself called on to repudiate and condemn the acts of these outlaws, and to order them treated as common enemies of mankind.

**17. Another reign of terror.**—In 1864, the deeds of cruelty and outrage on the part of some Federal officers elevated to power in Kentucky produced a terror among the people equal to that caused by the raiding guerrillas. Chief among the men who were guilty of these inhuman deeds were generals high in official authority and in command both in East and West Kentucky. Under orders of these, many prisoners, without trial, were taken out of their prison-houses, led away and shot to death by squads of soldiers. Many peaceful citizens were arrested and cast into prison, and heavy sums of money extorted from some of them under military duress. The pretexts for these acts were usually alleged to be retaliation for the outrages of the guerrillas. Often the innocent suffered.

**18. The last of the campaigns in Kentucky.**—During 1864, General Forrest attacked the Federals fortified at Paducah. Though he inflicted considerable loss upon the enemy, he was compelled to retire after an equal loss of his own men, killed and wounded. Late in the year, General Burnside, in command of four thousand Union troops, marched into Virginia through Pound Gap, in the hope of capturing

the important works at Saltville. This place was defended by two thousand Confederates, under General John S. Williams. The attack was made by the Federals; but, after a hotly-contested fight of some hours, the latter were defeated and compelled to retreat back into Kentucky, with a loss of several hundred men.

**19. The end of the war.**—The war was protracted in the earlier months of 1865, in Virginia, Georgia, the Carolinas and in the South-west; but the signs of exhaustion on the part of the Confederates were apparent. At last came the news of the retreat from Richmond, the surrender of Lee at Appomattox, and the downfall of the Confederate government. To this greatest of all modern wars, Kentucky contributed to the Union ranks seventy-six thousand three hundred and thirty-five volunteers; while thirty thousand of her sons are supposed to have entered, from first to last, the ranks of the Confederate army. The discharged Federals and the paroled Confederates returned together in peace to their homes, and again resumed their occupations and relations as neighbors and citizens. All true soldiers joined in ridding the State of lawlessness and outrage, and restoring quiet and prosperity.

**20. Abolition in Kentucky.**—In February, the Thirteenth Amendment to the Federal Constitution was before our Legislature for action. It provided for the abolition of slavery in all the States, without paying for those freed in the loyal States. A resolution to accept the amendment, provided the Government would pay for the slaves freed, was defeated. The vote on the main question to reject the amendment was carried by a large majority.

**21. Comparative size of Kentuckians.**—Some curious facts were developed by the war. In the measurement of men who were recruited from the different States during the war, statistics of whom were kept, it was shown that the soldiers

from Kentucky and Tennessee were the largest and tallest men in the United States, and in the world. Their average height is nearly an inch greater than that of the New England troops. They exceed them equally in girth of chest and circumference of head. In size, they come up to the standard of the picked regiments of the armies of Europe.

22. **Losses of men by the war.**—It is estimated that in the two regular armies the State lost over thirty thousand men by wounds in battle and by diseases in hospitals and elsewhere, resulting directly from the war. To these may be added several thousand whose lives were sacrificed within the State from irregular causes. There were one hundred and thirty-eight combats between the opposing forces on the soil of Kentucky from the beginning in 1861 to the close in 1865. By the official reports, the known number of Federal troops in the field and enlisted from all the States, in 1865, were one million five hundred and sixteen men. The Confederates surrendered, in all their military departments, a total of two hundred and twenty thousand four hundred and twenty-nine men. Over three millions of Federals, and a third as many Confederates, were enlisted during the four years of hostilities.

1,51!

---

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

---

### CHAPTER XX.—1862-65.

1. **Martial law in 1862.**—Who was made chief commandant in June? What were the orders of the Secretary of War? What was being done for the Southern cause in Kentucky? What was required of disloyal men? What indemnity was enforced for property taken? What was done with leading sympathizers with the South?
2. **Resignation of Governor Magoffin.**—How were the Governor's sympathies? What did he obstruct? What did this induce him to do? Who succeeded him?

3. **Battle of Richmond.**—What army threatened the invasion of Kentucky? Under whose command? What of Kirby Smith's command? How did he advance into Kentucky? Where did he attack the Federal army? Under whose command? When? What was the result of the battle of Richmond? What were the losses on each side? Where did the Federals retreat?
4. **Bragg's invasion of Kentucky.**—With what force did he invade? What route did he march? What Federal General did he intercept? When did he reach Munfordville? What did he capture there? What was expected Bragg would then do?
5. **Bragg's retreat and failure.**—Where did Bragg retreat? What did Buell then do? How was the Federal army re-enforced? What movement did Buell then make? What was the position of the Federal forces? What skirmish battles were fought? Who was made Confederate Governor of the State? When?
6. **Battle of Perryville.**—What of the tactics of the opposing Generals? Where was the main body of the Confederates? Of the Federals? Where was the left wing of the Confederate army? Whom did they fight there? Describe the battle.
7. **Bragg's retreat from Kentucky.**—Where did he fall back to? Who confronted him at Harrodsburg? What were the numbers of each army? What was expected? What did Bragg next do?
8. **Campaigns outside of Kentucky.**—How many Kentuckians were in each army? What were their former relations? In what future battles did they meet? What of the battles in the East?
9. **Morgan's brief raid.**—When was it made? With how many men? What did it accomplish? What did the Federals learn from him? How did they retaliate?
10. **Proclamation of freedom.**—By whom was it issued? When? Against what States? What was the effect on slavery in Kentucky? How did it affect many Union men?
11. **Skirmish battles in Kentucky.**—What of the battle of Mt. Sterling? What of Pegram and Wolford? What skirmish was had at Louisa? Where and by whom was Colonel Cluke defeated? Who defeated Pegram's cavalry? What of the Ninth Kentucky cavalry? Where was Everett defeated?
12. **Morgan's campaign across the Ohio.**—What route did he take across Kentucky? When? What of the fight at Marrowbone?

At Green river bridge? What capture was made at Lebanon? Where did he cross the Ohio river? What route did he take through Indiana? What route from Cincinnati? Where was he checked at the Ohio river? What prevented the crossing? What did he do?

13. **Imprisonment and escape of Morgan.**—Where was he imprisoned? What colonels were imprisoned with him? What majors? What captains? Who planned an escape? How was it executed? Who escaped?
14. **Morgan's career and death.**—When was he given another command? How did he invade Kentucky again? When? What places did he capture? What disasters befell him after? Whither did he go in Tennessee? How was he betrayed there? When? What was the result?
15. **Military changes in Kentucky.**—What of the elections in 1863? Who was elected Governor? What did General Boyle do? What of his successors in office? What troops were now first enlisted? What use was made of some slaves, soon to be freed?
16. **Guerrilla bands.**—Whence came these? For what did they band together? What crimes did they commit? How were they regarded by both armies?
17. **Another reign of terror.**—What officials became cruel and corrupt? When? Who were prominent among these? Of what bloody cruelties were they guilty? What extortions?
18. **The last of the campaigns in Kentucky.**—When were these? What point did General Forrest attack? What was the result? What campaign did Burbridge undertake? With how many troops? Who commanded the Confederates at Saltville? What defeat was suffered?
19. **The end of the war.**—Where was the war protracted? To what time? What news came from Richmond, Virginia? What final news came? How many Kentucky troops went to the Federal army? How many to the Confederate? With what feelings did they return home?
20. **Abolition in Kentucky.**—What constitutional amendment was passed? When did our Legislature act upon it? What was the vote?
21. **Comparative size of Kentuckians.**—What of their height compared with the men of the North-east? Of other States and countries? What of their comparative size of chest? Of head?

22. **Losses of men by the war.**—How many Kentuckians were lost in both armies by the direct causes of war? By the indirect causes? How many Federal troops were in the field at the close of the war? How many Confederates? How many were enlisted on either side during the war?

---

## CHAPTER XXI.—1865-1871.

### FROM THE SURRENDERS OF THE CONFEDERATE ARMIES TO THE CONCESSION OF CITIZENS' RIGHTS TO THE COLORED RACE.

1. **Assassination of President Lincoln.**—In the midst of the surrenders which gave token of early peace, and before the last flag was furled to rest, the rent and divided nation was shocked with the news of one of the most revolting tragedies that history of any age records. On the 14th day of April, 1865, five days after the surrender of General Lee, President Lincoln was assassinated at Ford's theater, Washington City, by a pistol-shot in the head, at the hands of John Wilkes Booth, an actor. The murder thrilled every section of the country with dread and horror. The event was to be deplored by the people of the South at this crisis as much as by the people of the North. Though Mr. Lincoln had been their enemy in war, he had often expressed his sorrow over the divided nation, and a desire for a return of peace and reunion. It was believed that on the submission of the South, President Lincoln would favor the return to the Union of the seceded States on generous and liberal terms. His tragic death was therefore deemed a great calamity to the people of the South, who feared that their future fortunes might be placed in very unfriendly hands.

2. **Politics and parties in Kentucky.**—At the August election in 1865, the Southern Rights' citizens abstained from voting. The Union party had been divided by the extreme war measures of the Federal administration, which many

held to have overridden the civil authorities of the State, and, in bad faith, to have violated the early pledges made. The election resulted in a legislative majority for the Moderate Union over the Republican party. The conservative party was now in power in all three branches of the State government. Military law yet asserted its power in Kentucky, and in very many places the voting was obstructed by guards of soldiers. In some cases the civil authorities arrested the officers who thus interfered with the rights of suffrage, and subjected them to trials and heavy fines.

**3. Kentucky relieved of military oppression.**—The terrorism and cruelties of the last two years ceased with the removal of the notorious rulers from their commands. General Palmer succeeded these men as military commandant of Kentucky early in 1865. His authority in the State was brief, and was marked by no events of very great importance. There was some needless intermeddling with slaves in the State, who were already practically freed from bondage. Slavery was rapidly disappearing without the authority and interference of the military. In December the Legislature repealed all the laws enacted against treason and the Confederates during the war, and restored all alike to civil rights again.

**4. Kentucky saved from carpet-bag rule.**—There yet remained in Kentucky many of that venal and corrupt class, re-enforced by like adventurers from without—a sort of fungus element that grows up out of the chaos and violence of all great wars—who would, under continued military license, have subjected Kentucky to the same rule of usurpation, robbery and outrage as was imposed on the eleven seceded States. But the great body of citizens, in both the conservative and radical wings of the Union party, were honest and patriotic men, and refused to favor or countenance any such policy. It is but justice to credit these elements of the

Union party with the rescue of Kentucky from the shameless extortions and misrule of the carpet-baggers. Many of these latter moved on into the less fortunate States south; others remained in Kentucky to manage and organize the Freedman's Bureau, which assumed to care for the freedmen so recently released from bondage.

**5. Civil order quickly restored.**—It was a happy incident for the Commonwealth that military rule was so quickly ended and civil order so generally restored. This sentiment of profound regard for the civil authority over the military was manifest in Kentucky throughout the war. Her finances were managed with the same honesty and integrity of purpose. Though the State borrowed over four millions of dollars, in addition to some other indebtedness, her credit never fell below par. This was in the face of the fact that, at the beginning of the war, the State was owing four million seven hundred and twenty-nine thousand two hundred and thirty-four dollars. No other State of the Union maintained a better credit, and this while the bonds of the Federal Government were being sold very much below their par value.

**6. Political parties in 1867.**—Early in 1867 all military restrictions were removed from Kentucky, and the right of suffrage left free to all white voters only. The conservative wing of the Union party now openly opposed the extreme measures of the Federal administration. There was, indeed, now but little difference upon the doctrine of States' and civil rights and upon the policy of the reconstruction of the State governments between this majority element of the Union party and the Southern Rights' citizens of the State. The odious carpet-bag rule in the South was almost universally condemned in Kentucky.

**7. Elections in 1867.**—In August, 1867, the first election of State officers was held since the war. The Democratic

ticket was John L. Helm for Governor, John W. Stevenson for Lieutenant-Governor, John Rodman for Attorney-General, D. Howard Smith for Auditor, J. W. Tate for Treasurer, J. A. Dawson for Register and Z. F. Smith for Superintendent of Public Instruction. The Republican ticket opposed to this was S. M. Barnes, R. T. Baker, J. M. Brown, S. Adams, M. J. Roark, J. M. Fiddler and D. Stephenson. The conservative Union party put forth a ticket composed of W. B. Kinkaid, H. Taylor, J. M. Harlan, J. S. Hurt, A. Allen, J. J. Craddock and B. M. Harney. It was soon manifest that there was no room for a third party in the State. The Democratic ticket was elected by nearly one hundred thousand majority.

**8. Federal and State politics.**—The elections of 1867 forecast the relations of parties in Kentucky to the present day. The war having ceased, the political issue brought out again to full life and form the old Democratic party in opposition to the now great Republican party. There was no middle ground for a third conservative party to exist. The vote cast for the latter left it in a hopeless minority, and it failed to organize for any future effort. The old Southern Rights' element and one-half of the Union party fused into one, and have since held the State government by large majorities. Governor Helm was inaugurated on the 3d of September, 1867, and died on the 8th. John W. Stevenson became Governor until 1871.

**9. Governor Stevenson's administration, 1867-71.**—The message of Governor Stevenson suggested the enactment of laws to facilitate the payment of the State debt; to suppress the outrages of "regulators" and other bands of lawless men—the refuse of the armies—who continued to depredate upon the people of the State; to reorganize and endow the common schools of the State after the plan set forth by the Superintendent of Public Instruction, and to enlarge and

reform the State Prison to accommodate the great increase of convicts therein. It also deplored the policy of the Federal government toward the eleven States which, he stated, "were now stripped of their sovereignty, their right of suffrage and their right of representation in Congress, and from which the bulwarks of personal freedom, habeas corpus, freedom of speech, freedom of the press and trial by jury had been ruthlessly taken away".

**10. Common school reform in 1867-71.**—In 1867-69, a legislative measure, originated by Superintendent Z. F. Smith, to vote an increase of tax from five, to twenty cents on the one hundred dollars of taxable property for common school purposes was adopted. The act was ratified by a majority of nearly twenty-five thousand at the election in August, 1869. The colored men, as yet, were not permitted by law to vote in Kentucky. This great increase of school revenues and the enactment of a better school law at the session of 1869-70 marked a new era of reform and advance in the common schools. The school term was extended from three to five months; teachers' wages were advanced three-fold, and new life and interest infused into education throughout the Commonwealth. Since the impetus given then, our common school system has continued to command the confidence of the people, and to improve to the present day. Great credit is due for these results to the able and faithful management of H. A. M. Henderson and Joseph Desha Pickett, who succeeded to the office of Superintendent of Public Instruction.

**11. Official changes.**—At the assembling of the legislative body, the Senate elected P. H. Leslie to preside over its deliberations, Lieutenant-Governor Stevenson having left the office vacant by being made Governor. At the session, 1869-70, the Legislature elected Governor Stevenson United States Senator from March, 1871. Resigning office Feb-

ruary 13, 1871, Preston H. Leslie succeeded him as Governor. In August, 1871, the Democratic party elected upon their ticket Preston H. Leslie, Governor; John G. Carlisle, Lieutenant-Governor; D. Howard Smith, Auditor; James W. Tate, Treasurer; John Rodman, Attorney-General; H. A. M. Henderson, Superintendent of Public Instruction, and Alexander Grant, Register of the Land Office.

**12. Unanimous sentiment of Kentucky.**—In the Republican State Convention, in 1871, a resolution was voted declaring that: “We earnestly desire a restoration of friendly relations with the people of our sister States lately in arms against our national authority, and earnestly wish for them all the blessings and prosperity to be enjoyed under a republican form of government. We are in favor of a complete amnesty to all of our fellow-citizens of every State, who are laboring under disabilities by reason of any part taken in the late rebellion.” The sentiment herein avowed showed that there was no party in Kentucky that approved of the cruel and unjust policy of reconstruction enforced by the Federal Government upon the Southern States which had laid down arms of war upon the faith and honest wish of being restored to the Union in peace.

---

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

---

### CHAPTER XXI.—1865-71.

1. **Assassination of President Lincoln.**—By whom was Lincoln assassinated? Where? When? How did the deed affect public feeling? Why did the South regret it?
2. **Politics and parties in Kentucky.**—What of the election in 1865? What divided the Union party? Which wing was successful? How was voting suppressed in very many places?
3. **Kentucky relieved of military oppression.**—What policy did the conservative Union party pursue? Who was the next

military successor? What of Palmer's conduct? What legislative relief was enacted?

4. **Kentucky saved from carpet-bag rule.**—What design had the carpet-baggers on Kentucky? How were they thwarted? Did all three parties in Kentucky desire peace and honest rule? What of the Freedman's Bureau?
5. **Civil order quickly restored.**—What sentiment forced this? Did all desire civil authority restored over that of the military? How much money did Kentucky borrow for war purposes? What of her credit? What was her debt before the war?
6. **Political parties in 1867.**—What restrictions on voting were then removed? What position did the conservative party take? Who combined with them?
7. **Elections in 1867.**—What three parties put forth candidates in the State elections? What party was successful? Who were elected State officers? By what majorities?
8. **Federal and State politics.**—What two party elements made up the majority? What a hopeless minority? When was Helm inaugurated Governor? When did he die? Who then became Governor?
9. **Governor Stevenson's administration.**—What were some of the recommendations in the Governor's message? What did he say of the common schools? Of State Prison management? What did he deplore in his message? What rights had been taken from the Southern people?
10. **Common school reform.**—What important measure did the Legislature act upon in 1867-69? What increase of school tax was submitted? Did the people ratify the measure? What was the effect on the common schools? How much was the school term increased? What increase of teachers' wages? What good effect has the measure had since? To what officials were the improvements largely due?
11. **Official changes.**—Who was made United States Senator in 1869-70? Who succeeded Stevenson as Governor? When was Leslie elected Governor? What other State officers were then elected?
12. **Unanimous sentiment of Kentucky.**—What resolution was passed by the Republican convention? What amnesty did it recommend? What did this action show? What Federal policy did it condemn?

## CHAPTER XXII.—1871-1891

FROM THE BEGINNING OF GOVERNOR LESLIE'S ADMINISTRATION,  
IN 1871, TO THE CLOSE OF GOVERNOR BUCK-  
NER'S, IN 1891.

**1. Rights of citizenship to the colored people.**—The Fourteenth and Fifteenth Amendments to the Constitution of the United States, conferring citizenship and citizens' rights upon the colored race, having both been ratified by 1870, the colored men exercised the right of suffrage at the election, August, 1871, and thus reduced the usual Democratic majority in the State over forty thousand. There was still existing much prejudice against the exercise of the right to testify in the courts on the part of colored persons, but enlightened public sentiment and sense of justice conceded this right. Some of the judges of the State courts had already ventured in advance to admit such testimony; and on January 8, 1872, the Legislature made it lawful for them to testify in all the courts and in all cases where they had evidence to give. On February 23, 1874, an act was approved providing for a separate fund and separate schools for the colored children, for the first time.

**2. Events under Leslie's administration, 1871-1875.**—In 1873 a law was enacted to establish a bureau to prosecute a thorough geological survey of the State. Under this act Professor Shaler was appointed chief of the corps of survey, and, after some years of service, was succeeded by Professor J. R. Procter, the present incumbent. The results of the work of this department have discovered untold wealth in the mineral resources, the forestry and the soils of Kentucky. These results have been made known abroad, and have induced the movements of immigrants to settle in the State,

and the investment of much capital in new industries, which promise to add to our future wealth. Another important law was enacted to suppress the terrorism and violence of secretly organized bodies known as "Kuklux Klans," another remnant of the late war, become vicious by assuming license to commit lawless acts with good intentions.

**3. Great financial panic of 1873.**—In September, 1873, the most violent financial panic ever known in our history befell the country. Ten years before, and in the middle of the period of the great war of the rebellion, an era of speculative venture, of prodigal waste and of wild inflation set in, and continued its onward flow toward high tide until near the point of final issue. An inflation of values caused by the depreciation of the government bonds, and of the doubtful currency issued by the government as a war measure, was the result throughout the country. In comparison with gold and silver, the bonds were much below par, while the paper currency was sold or exchanged at three hundred to two hundred dollars for one hundred dollars of gold or silver. Real estate and personal property were bought and sold at currency prices. As the greenback paper currency gradually approached the price of gold and silver, these inflated values of property lowered toward a specie standard. This decline of values, with the great increase of debt from speculation, left the people of the country in a bad financial condition and unable to pay their debts. When the panic came, therefore, in 1873, there was general insolvency and bankruptcy throughout the country. Great depression in trade and finance ensued for five or six years afterward.

**4. Governor McCreary's administration, 1875-9.**—In 1875 the Democratic State ticket was elected, composed of James B. McCreary, Governor; John C. Underwood, Lieutenant-Governor; Thomas E. Moss, Attorney-General; D. Howard Smith, Auditor; H. A. M. Henderson, Superintendent of

Public Instruction, and Thomas D. Marcum, Register. Benjamin H. Bristow, a distinguished Kentuckian, was appointed Secretary of the Treasury in General Grant's cabinet, and Curtis F. Burnam Assistant Secretary. In the message of Governor McCreary, in December, 1875, the bonded debt of the State is shown to have been only one hundred and eighty-four thousand three hundred and ninety-four dollars, with ample resources to pay off the whole and leave a balance in the treasury.

**5. Important legislative acts.**—The Legislature of 1875-6 established a Bureau of Agriculture, with the appointment of a commissioner, to gather information and statistics upon agriculture, horticulture and other industrial interests, and to make annual reports thereon. This Bureau is yet sustained, and has done much good for the soil and stock interests of the State. Provision was made at the same session to extend the geological survey, and also for the propagation and protection of food fishes in the waters of Kentucky.

**6. State and national elections.**—At the same legislative session, James B. Beck was elected United States Senator to serve six years from the 4th of March, 1877; and at the session in January, 1878, John S. Williams was elected to serve six years from the 4th of March, 1879. In November, 1876, the Congressmen elected were Oscar Turner, James A. McKenzie, John W. Caldwell, J. Proctor Knott, Albert S. Willis, John G. Carlisle, J. C. S. Blackburn, P. B. Thompson, Jr., G. M. Adams and E. C. Phister. In 1876 Tilden and Hendricks were the Democratic candidates for President and Vice-President; Hayes and Wheeler of the Republican party. The former had a popular majority of one hundred and fifty-seven thousand three hundred and ninety-four, and claimed a majority of the electoral college; yet the Republican party in power, contesting the returns of certain States on the ground of irregularities of the methods at the elec-

tions, was authorized to declare the electoral count in favor of Hayes and Wheeler. Some of the ablest Democratic leaders in the disfranchised Southern States, seeing that Tilden and his friends would passively submit to this arbitration, prudently sought concessions from the President and his advisers. They hoped it would meet the plans and designs of the Republican party for the Government to move the military and the carpet-bag usurpations and officials from the South. President Hayes readily complied with these plans for deliverance.

**7. Dr. Luke P. Blackburn elected Governor in 1879.**—In the State elections for 1879, Luke P. Blackburn was elected Governor over Walter Evans, Republican, and C. W. Cook, National; James E. Cantrill, Lieutenant-Governor; P. W. Hardin, Attorney-General; Fayette Hewitt, Auditor; James W. Tate, Treasurer; J. Desha Pickett, Superintendent of Public Instruction; Ralph Sheldon, Register. In September, 1878, William S. Pryor became Chief Justice of the State, on the retirement of William Lindsay from the Appellate Bench, and Thomas H. Hines succeeded the latter for the next eight years. In 1881 Joseph H. Lewis was elected to the vacancy of M. H. Cofer, deceased.

**8. The Superior Court established.**—At the session of 1881-2, the General Assembly passed an act creating the Superior Court, of three judges, to relieve the Appellate Court of its overburdened docket. J. A. Bowden, A. E. Richards and Richard Reid were elected judges of this court. After the tragic death of Judge Reid, J. Q. A. Ward succeeded to the vacancy, and Joseph M. Barbour succeeded A. E. Richards, retired. In the Presidential election of 1880, the Hancock and English Democratic ticket received a majority of over forty thousand in Kentucky, over Garfield and Arthur, Republican. Weaver, the National candidate, received eleven thousand four hundred and ninety-nine votes.

Garfield and Arthur were, however, elected and inaugurated March 4, 1881. The tragic wounding of President Garfield in July after, by a pistol shot from the hand of the assassin, Guiteau, and his painful suffering and final death, created profound emotion throughout the land.

**9. Events in Blackburn's administration, 1879-83.**—Governor Blackburn's first message suggested reforms for the increase of the revenues of the State, to meet the deficits annually shown in official reports for fifteen years past; a change in the management of the penitentiary from the lessee plan to the warden system; the creation of a commission for the regulation of railroads, and the transfer of the State's interests in the improvements in the Kentucky river to the general government. Most of these suggestions were favorably met by acts of legislation. Governor Blackburn found nine hundred and sixty-nine convicts in the penitentiary, and but seven hundred and eighty cells to accommodate them. To relieve the sickness and distress from this overcrowding, he pardoned many inmates and set them free.

**10. Officials-elect.**—For Representatives in the Forty-eighth Congress, of Democrats, there were elected, in 1882, Oscar Turner, in the first district; James F. Clay, in the second; J. G. Halsell, in the third; T. A. Robinson, in the fourth; Albert S. Willis, in the fifth; John G. Carlisle, in the sixth; J. C. S. Blackburn, in the seventh; P. B. Thompson, in the eighth, and Frank Wolford, in the eleventh. Of Republicans, W. W. Culbertson, in the ninth, and John D. White, in the tenth. In the State election in 1883, the Democratic ticket received majorities of near forty-five thousand votes. For Governor, Thomas Z. Morrow was defeated by J. Proctor Knott; for Lieutenant-Governor, Speed S. Fry, by J. R. Hindman; for Attorney-General, the Democrats elected P. W. Hardin; for Auditor, Fayette Hewitt; for Treasurer, James W. Tate; for Superintendent of Public Instruction,

J. Desha Pickett; for Register, J. G. Cecil. Other State officers appointed were James A. McKenzie, Secretary of State; H. H. McCarty, Assistant Secretary; John Davis, Commissioner of Agriculture; L. C. Norman, Insurance Commissioner, and John R. Procter, State Geologist.

**11. Events in Governor Knott's administration, 1883-7.**—On the Appellate Bench in 1884 were Chief Justice T. F. Hargis, Thomas H. Hines, William S. Pryor and Joseph H. Lewis. In this year William H. Holt was elected to succeed Judge Hargis, retired. In 1886 Caswell Bennett was elected to succeed Judge Hines, retired. For the United States Senate, James B. Beck was elected to succeed himself, from March 4, 1883; and afterward J. C. S. Blackburn was elected to serve for six years, from March 4, 1885. Elected November, 1884, to the Forty-ninth Congress, were W. J. Stone, Polk Laffoon, J. E. Halsell, Thomas A. Robinson, Albert S. Willis, John G. Carlisle, W. C. P. Breckinridge, James B. McCreary, Frank Wolford, W. P. Taulbee, Democrats, and W. H. Wadsworth, Republican.

**12. Presidential election in 1884.**—In 1884 Grover Cleveland and Thomas A. Hendricks, Democrats, were elected President and Vice-President of the United States over James G. Blaine and John A. Logan, Republicans; B. F. Butler and A. M. West, Greenbackers, and J. P. St. John and William Daniel, Prohibitionists. On the 4th of March, 1885, Cleveland and Hendricks were inaugurated—the first Democratic administration for twenty-four years. Vice-President Hendricks dying suddenly in office on the 25th of November, 1885, John Sherman, Republican, was elected to preside over the United States Senate on its assembling in December.

**13. Important reform measures.**—In the first message of Governor Knott, he showed that, behind the apparent healthy financial condition of the State, there recurred again

the annoying annual deficit, which, on June 30, 1883, was four hundred and ninety-one thousand three hundred and seventy-five dollars. He attributes this deficit to a grossly defective system of assessment, made still more inefficient by the loose and negligent manner in which the laws are executed. The last assessment made the taxable property of the State three hundred and seventy-four million five hundred thousand dollars. The Governor thought it was really worth double that sum. The Legislature of 1885-6, at the instance of Auditor Hewitt, enacted a new assessment law to remedy this evil, which it was hoped would be more faithfully enforced. In 1883-4, the Legislature provided for the building of a second State prison at Eddyville, Lyon county, to accommodate the increase of convicts.

**14. Educational conventions.**—On April 5, 1883, a great State educational convention met at Frankfort to consider the situation and devise and organize means for the practical improvement of the common school system. A committee was appointed to report to an adjourned meeting at Louisville in September. In September, 1883, during the great exposition in Louisville, an interstate educational convention was held in that city. It was attended by many of the delegates appointed by Governors of the various States on invitation of Governor Blackburn. At this convention several important educational subjects of a national bearing were presented and intimately and intelligently discussed. A number of the leading educators of the Union were present.

**15. Increase of population.**—The statistics of the census returns throw much light upon the growth of population and wealth. When we consider the large emigration of native Kentuckians and the small additions coming from other States and foreign countries, the increase of the Kentuckians is remarkable, and not surpassed by any other people. Of

one million six hundred and forty-eight thousand six hundred and ninety population in 1880, one million four hundred and two thousand six hundred and twelve are native to the State, one hundred and eighty-six thousand five hundred and sixty-one are immigrants from other States, and fifty-nine thousand five hundred and seventeen from foreign countries; or two hundred and forty-five thousand and seventy-eight immigrants in all. The total number of persons born in Kentucky and resident beyond the State, as shown by late census figures, amounted to over four hundred thousand. The following figures will show the steady and healthy increase of population each decade since 1790. The population was in—

|                |         |                |           |
|----------------|---------|----------------|-----------|
| 1790 . . . . . | 73,677  | 1850 . . . . . | 982,405   |
| 1800 . . . . . | 222,955 | 1860 . . . . . | 1,155,684 |
| 1810 . . . . . | 406,571 | 1870 . . . . . | 1,321,011 |
| 1820 . . . . . | 564,135 | 1880 . . . . . | 1,648,690 |
| 1830 . . . . . | 687,917 | 1890 . . . . . | 1,858,635 |
| 1840 . . . . . | 779,828 |                |           |

16. **The quadrennial election of 1887.**—The Democratic convention nominated for Governor, Simon B. Buckner; for Lieutenant-Governor, James W. Bryan; for Auditor, Fayette Hewitt; for Treasurer, James W. Tate; for Attorney-General, P. W. Hardin; for Superintendent of Public Instruction, Joseph Desha Pickett; for Register, Thomas H. Corbett. The nominees of the Republican party were, for Governor, William O. Bradley; for Lieutenant-Governor, Matt. O. Doherty; for Auditor, R. D. Davis; for Treasurer, J. R. Puryear; for Attorney-General, John W. Feland; for Superintendent of Public Instruction, W. H. Childers; for Register, T. J. Tinsley. The Democratic candidate for Governor received one hundred and forty-three thousand two hundred and seventy votes, and the Republican candidate one hundred and twenty-six thousand four hundred

and seventy-three, and the candidates for the other offices contesting, varying but a few thousand, respectively. The tickets of the Prohibition and Union Labor parties received but a scattering vote. The Democrats elected, with the exception of Treasurer Sharp, succeeded by H. S. Hale, appointed to succeed James W. Tate, are in office until September, 1891. At the same election, the question of calling a convention to prepare a new Constitution for Kentucky was submitted, and the vote in favor was one hundred and sixty-two thousand five hundred and fifty-seven, against sixty-five thousand nine hundred and fifty-six.

**17. Revenue reform.**—During this year the new revenue law, prepared by Auditor Hewitt and enacted by the previous Legislature, went into effect. The total valuation of property for taxation under the same was four hundred and eighty-three million four hundred and ninety-seven thousand six hundred and ninety dollars—an increase over the preceding year, under the old law, of ninety-two million six hundred and sixty-nine thousand seven hundred and twenty-seven dollars. For 1886 there was a deficiency of revenue to pay the State expenses of two hundred and ninety-three thousand one hundred and eighty-five dollars and fifty-two cents. The new revenue law added four hundred thousand dollars to the funds of the treasury, and thus has enabled the State to meet all her obligations promptly to the present



GOVERNOR SIMON B. BUCKNER.

date. Before the new law went into effect, much personal property could not be reached by the assessors, and thus evaded taxation. This is partly remedied now.

18. **Railroad improvements.**—The period from 1885 to the present date has been notable for the progress made in railroad building and in opening to the industries of the world the great wealth of coal, iron, timber and other materials that enter so profitably into manufactures and trade. For 1887 the railroad commissioners report two thousand three hundred and forty-one miles of railroad in operation in the State, the total cost of which was seventy-six million five hundred and thirteen thousand nine hundred and twenty dollars. These roads pay into the State treasury taxes on an aggregate assessed value of thirty-five million five hundred and seventy-one thousand six hundred and thirty-one dollars. Their gross earnings in 1887 were twelve million three hundred and ninety-nine thousand seven hundred and twenty-four dollars, about two-thirds of which were paid out for operating expenses. By the end of 1889 the mileage of railroads will approximate three thousand miles.

19. **Common school system.**—The reports of the Superintendent of Public Instruction for the last few years show most gratifying results in the progress and improvement of the public school system. Under the experienced and efficient management of the incumbent head, Joseph Desha Pickett, amendatory legislation from session to session has brought the school law to a standard of excellence equal to that of the most favored States of the Union. The improvement in the qualifications of the teachers, in the methods of normal training, in the payment of teachers' wages, in the selection of text-books and courses of study, and in the increase in local taxation are manifest evidences of a progressive and healthy growth. For the school year beginning July 1, 1891, the total amount in the State treasury for the

school fund is one million five hundred and ninety-five thousand two hundred and eighty-two dollars. The number of children of pupil ages is five hundred and eighty-four thousand and forty-one white, and one hundred and fourteen thousand one hundred and twenty-three colored ; total, six hundred and ninety-eight thousand one hundred and sixty-four. Deducting twenty-four thousand four hundred and thirteen dollars for all expenses of the department of education, and dividing the net sum by the number of children, gives a *per capita* for each child of pupil age of two dollars and twenty-five cents.

20. **National Presidential election of 1888.**—On the first Tuesday in November, 1888, the Presidential contest came off, resulting in the election of Benjamin Harrison, of Indianapolis, President, and Levi P. Morton, Vice-President, of the United States, by the Republican party, over Grover Cleveland and Allen G. Thurman, the nominees of the Democratic party. At the same time, W. J. Stone, of Eddyville ; W. T. Ellis, of Owensboro ; I. H. Goodnight, of Franklin ; James B. Montgomery, of Elizabethtown ; Asher G. Caruth of Louisville ; John G. Carlisle, of Covington ; W. C. P. Breckinridge, of Lexington ; Thomas H. Paynter, of Greenup, and James B. McCreary, of Richmond, of the Democratic party, and Frank Finley, of Williamsburg, and J. H. Wilson, of Barboursville, of the Republican party, were elected Representatives in Congress, to serve two years from the 4th of March, 1889. The elected Senators in Congress from Kentucky were James B. Beck and J. C. S. Blackburn.

21. **Our National Centennial.**—The year 1889 is called the centennial year of our government, because the first Congress assembled and the first President was installed in office under the Constitution of the United States one hundred years before. On the 30th day of April, 1789, Washington, having been elected, was duly inaugurated the first

Chief Magistrate of the Nation. On the 30th day of April, 1889, this important event was duly celebrated in the city of New York. It was the largest assemblage of the people of our country ever known in its history. Kentucky, with her sister Commonwealths, honored the occasion with the presence of her Governor and his staff of many patriotic citizens, and a portion of her military forces and equipment under the lead of their commanding general, John B. Castleman. In the long ages to follow, this centenary epoch will be celebrated as one of the most cherished in the memories and hearts of the American people. On October 12, 1492, Columbus discovered America. October 12, 1892, will be the fourth centennial of this notable event. In commemoration of it, there will be held at Chicago the Columbian Exposition, at which there will be the greatest and finest exhibit of the world's products and the largest attendance of the people of all nations ever known in the history of man.

**22. The new Alliance party.**—In 1889 two organizations of the farmers in Kentucky, the Wheel and the Farmers' Alliance, merged into one body, styled the "Farmers' Alliance and Industrial Union." At first this great labor movement was not designed to be political, so much as to benefit the fraternity, materially and socially. The venality and perversion of legislation and powers of government, it was claimed, had become so odious and oppressive to the laboring classes that they were forced to organize themselves for self-defense and protection against the monied classes. The Alliance and Union offered the opportunity; hence, it has asserted itself a power in politics, controlling the elections in several States, and promising to control the elections of the President and the Congress of the United States in time.

**23. Provisions for a Constitutional Convention.**—The Legislature of 1889-90, the conditions of law having been all complied with, enacted provisions for calling a convention

to draft a new Constitution for the State. One hundred delegates—one from each legislative district in the State—elected on the first Monday in August, 1890, met on the 8th of September after, and continued in session until the 11th of April, 1891. The draft for a new Constitution made by this body was submitted to the people, to be voted upon for ratification, on the first Monday in August, 1891. Wide and marked differences of opinion upon the merits of the instrument were entertained, and, on the issues made, very able and animated discussions were frequent and general by the friends on both sides. The popular vote was in favor of the adoption of the new Constitution to take the place of the one we have lived under since 1850.

**24. Important events of 1890.**—On the 27th of March, 1890, a fearful cyclone passed through Kentucky from the extreme western point on the Mississippi river, parallel with the Ohio river for over two hundred miles. Some loss of lives and property was sustained in several counties, mainly in the west end. The greatest destruction was at Louisville. In great force the tornado struck the city at the south-west end, and passed entirely through for over one mile, in a course north-eastwardly, to the Ohio river. The track of the cyclone was about three hundred yards wide, coming in at Eighteenth street and passing out at Sixth. It swept over about forty squares of buildings, unroofing some houses, blowing down portions of the walls of others, and utterly wrecking many. One thousand buildings were more or less injured, and nearly one hundred persons were killed in the ruins. The streets and open spaces were filled with the *debris* of the general wreck, and the military were called out for days to aid the police in protecting the stricken district from the pillage of thieves. In one year the injured property was repaired or rebuilt. James B. Beck having died in office early in 1890, John G. Carlisle was elected

United States Senator to succeed him by the Legislature then in session. The same persons were elected to Congress in November, 1890, as two years before, except that J. W. Kendall, of Morgan county, was added to the list, and Frank Finley omitted.

**25. Important State events of 1891.**—The State officers elected on the first Monday in August, 1891, to serve for four years, were Governor, Lieutenant-Governor, Attorney-General, Auditor, Treasurer, Register of the Land Office, Superintendent of Public Instruction and Clerk of Court of Appeals. For these offices were nominated in State convention, respectively, by the Democrats, John Young Brown, M. C. Alford, W. J. Hendrick, L. C. Norman, H. S. Hale, G. B. Swango, E. P. Thompson and A. Addams. Republicans, A. T. Wood, H. E. Huston, T. J. Crawford, Charles Blanford, Eli Farmer, L. I. Dodge and Robert Blain. Prohibition, Josiah Harris, H. M. Winslow, E. J. Polk, W. W. Goddard, J. M. Holmes, B. McGregor, A. B. Jones and R. S. Friend. People's party, S. B. Erwin, S. F. Smith, B. L. D. Guffy, W. G. Fulkerson, I. G. Sallee, M. Herreld, J. B. Secrest and W. B. Ogden. The nominees mentioned, as made by the Democratic convention, were elected to succeed the present incumbents for the next term, respectively.

**26. Kentucky now and in the future.**—1892 will be the Centennial year of our Commonwealth. Kentucky formally became a State of the Union, June 1, 1792. On the 4th day of June, 1792, Isaac Shelby, the first Governor, and the first Legislature-elect assembled at Lexington to organize the first State government. Some are looking forward to the celebration of our one hundredth anniversary, only three years after the national event. Will the aged and the youth of Kentucky be prepared to duly honor the great occasion? Have they acquainted themselves with the dramatic episodes and events of Kentucky history? Have they grown famil-

iar with the heroic lives and daring deeds of their ancestors? No subject can be more inspiring and instructive to the citizenship reared upon our soil. One eminent in the affairs of State has well said: "So fruitful is her natural and civil history that our State may well engage our common admiration and inspire our common love." The fame of her soldiers and statesmen, her scholars, her men of science and her inventors and mechanics has given her a name and established her reputation among the nations of the world. Let these excite the emulation of our youth and impress them with the lesson of our history. If faithfully learned and applied, with the prestige of her name and fame, we must not expect less of the youth of Kentucky than that she will, in the galaxy of the Union of States, assume the position of first among her peers. Arrangements are made, under the auspices of the Filson Historic Club, for a memorial celebration of our Centennial year in June, 1892. A stockade fort, after the model of Boonesborough, will be erected in one of the large parks of Louisville, and many relics of the Indians and the pioneers, for a curious and interesting exhibit, are provided, and others are sought for the display.

---

## TOPICAL ANALYSIS AND QUESTIONS.

---

### CHAPTER XXII.—1871-1891.

1. **Rights of citizenship to the colored people.**—What constitutional amendments had been ratified? By what year? What rights did they confer? What reduced the Democratic majority? When was the right to testify in the courts granted colored people? When did the Legislature grant them separate common schools?
2. **Events under Leslie's administration, 1871-5.**—What important bureau was established? Who was made chief of this?

Who succeeded Shaler? What have been the benefits of the geological survey? What other important law was passed?

3. **Great financial panic of 1873.**—What caused this panic? What inflated the values of property? What was the relative value of paper currency to gold and silver during the war? What was the change of value after the war? What is the relative value now? How did this affect the values of property?
4. **Governor McCreary's administration, 1875-9.**—What State officers were elected in 1875? By what party? How were the State's finances then?
5. **Important legislative acts.**—What State bureau was established? For what purpose? What was done for the geological survey?
6. **State and national elections.**—Who were elected United States Senators? Who Representatives in Congress? Who were the Democratic candidates for President and Vice-President? Who the Republican? What majority had Tilden and Hendricks? How were Hayes and Wheeler inaugurated? What question did Southern statesmen make with Republican leaders?
7. **Dr. Luke P. Blackburn elected in 1879**—Who was his opponent? What other State officers were elected? Who became Chief Justice of Kentucky in 1878? Who were elected Appellate Judges?
8. **The Superior Court established.**—When? Of how many judges? Who were elected judges of this court? Who was elected President in 1880? Against what opponents? What befell President Garfield?
9. **Events in Blackburn's administration, 1879-83.**—What was recommended to remedy the deficit in the treasury? What concerning the State prison? What of a railroad commission? What of Kentucky river improvements? What was the condition of the convicts in the State prison then? How did Governor Blackburn relieve this evil?
10. **Officials-elect.**—What Democratic Congressmen were elected in 1882? What Republican? Who was elected Governor in 1883? Who was his opponent? What other State officials were elected? What appointed?
11. **Events in Governor Knott's administration, 1883-7.**—Who were Appellate Judges in 1884? Who retired from the bench? Who succeeded him? Who retired in 1886? Who succeeded

him? Who was elected United States Senator from March, 1882? Who from March, 1885? Who were elected Representatives in Congress in 1884?

12. **Presidential election in 1884.**—What ticket was elected? Who were the opponents of Cleveland and Hendricks? How long had the Democratic party been out of power? When did Vice-President Hendricks die? Who was made his successor? How elected?
13. **Important reform measures.**—What evil did Governor Knott complain of? What was the treasury deficit June 30, 1883? What mainly caused this deficit? What remedy was applied? When did the Legislature vote to build a new State prison?
- 14.—**Educational conventions.**—Where was a State convention held? When? Where was a second held?
15. **Increase of population.**—What population does the census of 1880 give Kentucky? How many are native to the State? How many from other States? How many from foreign countries? How many emigrants from Kentucky to other States? What was the population of Kentucky in 1790? In each subsequent decade?
16. **The quadrennial election of 1887.**—What election was held in 1887? What parties contested? Who were the candidates of the Democratic party? Of the Republican party? What party candidates were elected? By what votes? Who afterward became Treasurer of State?
17. **Revenue reform.**—What revenue reform took place? What was the valuation of taxable property under it? How did the increase affect the State credit?
18. **Railroad improvements.**—What of railroad improvement? What effect has it on our State resources? How many miles of railroad in Kentucky in 1887? At what value were the railroads assessed in 1887? What is the probable increase to date?
19. **Common school system.**—What of the improvements of our common schools? What of the present school law? In what are the improvements seen? What is the amount of school fund of 1891-2? What is the number of pupil children? What is the *per capita*?
20. **National Presidential election of 1888.**—Who were elected President and Vice-President in November, 1888? Who were elected Congressmen by the Democrats? Who by the Republicans? Who are now United States Senators from Kentucky?

21. **Our National Centennial.**—What of the centennial year of our Federal government? What day of the month is the anniversary of Washington's inauguration as the first President? How was this day celebrated in 1889? What part did Kentucky take? What of the Quadri-Centennial Columbian Exposition at Chicago?
22. **The new Alliance party.**—What new party was formed in Kentucky in 1889? Why did it become political? What does it promise to do?
23. **Provisions for a Constitutional convention.**—What did the Legislature of 1889-90 do toward a new Constitution? How many delegates were elected? When did these meet in convention? What was done with the instrument drafted? How was it received by the people? How did the people vote on it in August?
24. **Important events of 1890.**—What great disaster happened in Kentucky in March, 1890? What were the effects in the country? What in Louisville? Who succeeded Mr. Beck as United States Senator this year? Who were elected to the Lower House of Congress this year?
25. **Important events of 1891.**—What election was in 1891? On what day? What parties had candidates before the people? Name the candidates for Governor of each party. What ticket was elected?
26. **Kentucky now and in the future.**—What year will be the centennial of our Commonwealth? What day of what month will be the one hundredth anniversary? What interest have the citizenship of our State in this notable event? What effect must it have on the minds of our youth in connection with Kentucky history? What has an eminent citizen said of the natural and civil history of the State? What of the virtues and fame of her great men? How may these impress the young? What may the educated youth do for the Commonwealth in the future? What of the celebration, June, 1892.

# APPENDIX.

---

## LIST OF COUNTIES IN KENTUCKY.

| NAME.                  | FOR WHOM NAMED.                 | COUNTY                   | TOWN. | ESTAB-<br>LISHED. | POPUL'N,<br>1890. |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------|-------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Adair . . . . .        | General John . . . . .          | Columbia . . . . .       |       | 1801 ✓            | 13,721            |
| Allen . . . . .        | Colonel John . . . . .          | Scottsville . . . . .    |       | 1815 ✓            | 13,692            |
| Anderson . . . . .     | Richard C. . . . .              | Lawrenceburg . . . . .   |       | 1827              | 10,610            |
| Ballard . . . . .      | Captain Bland . . . . .         | Wickliffe . . . . .      |       | 1842              | 8,390             |
| Barren . . . . .       | Treeless prairie . . . . .      | Glasgow . . . . .        |       | 1798              | 21,490 ✓          |
| Bath . . . . .         | Bath Springs . . . . .          | Owingsville . . . . .    |       | 1811              | 12,813            |
| Bell . . . . .         | Joshua F. . . . .               | Pineville . . . . .      |       | 1867              | 10,312            |
| Boone . . . . .        | Daniel . . . . .                | Burlington . . . . .     |       | 1798              | 12,246            |
| Bourbon . . . . .      | Bourbons of France . . . . .    | Paris . . . . .          |       | 1785 ✓            | 16,976            |
| Boyd . . . . .         | Hon. Lynn . . . . .             | Calettsburg . . . . .    |       | 1860              | 14,033            |
| Boyle . . . . .        | Judge John . . . . .            | Danville . . . . .       |       | 1842              | 12,948            |
| Bracken . . . . .      | William, pioneer . . . . .      | Brookville . . . . .     |       | 1796              | 12,369            |
| Breathitt . . . . .    | Governor John . . . . .         | Jackson . . . . .        |       | 1839              | 8,705             |
| Breckinridge . . . . . | John . . . . .                  | Hardinsburg . . . . .    |       | 1799              | 18,976            |
| Bullitt . . . . .      | Alexander Scott . . . . .       | Shepherdsville . . . . . |       | 1796              | 8,291             |
| Butler . . . . .       | General of Revolution . . . . . | Morgantown . . . . .     |       | 1810              | 13,956            |
| Caldwell . . . . .     | General John . . . . .          | Princeton . . . . .      |       | 1809              | 13,186            |
| Calloway . . . . .     | Colonel Richard . . . . .       | Murray . . . . .         |       | 1822              | 14,675            |
| Campbell . . . . .     | Colonel John . . . . .          | Newport . . . . .        |       | 1794              | 44,208            |
| Carlisle . . . . .     | John G. . . . .                 | Bardwell . . . . .       |       | 1886              | 7,612             |
| Carroll . . . . .      | Charles . . . . .               | Carrollton . . . . .     |       | 1838              | 9,266             |
| Carter . . . . .       | Colonel William G. . . . .      | Grayson . . . . .        |       | 1838              | 17,204            |
| Casey . . . . .        | Colonel William . . . . .       | Liberty . . . . .        |       | 1806              | 11,848            |
| Christian . . . . .    | Colonel William . . . . .       | Hopkinsville . . . . .   |       | 1796              | 34,118            |
| Clark . . . . .        | General George Rogers . . . . . | Winchester . . . . .     | ✓     | 1792 ✓            | 15,434            |
| Clay . . . . .         | General Green . . . . .         | Manchester . . . . .     |       | 1806              | 12,447            |
| Clinton . . . . .      | Governor of New York . . . . .  | Albany . . . . .         |       | 1835              | 7,047             |
| Crittenden . . . . .   | John J. . . . .                 | Marion . . . . .         |       | 1842              | 13,119            |
| Cumberland . . . . .   | River of same . . . . .         | Burksville . . . . .     |       | 1798              | 8,452             |
| Daviess . . . . .      | Colonel Joseph H. . . . .       | Owensboro . . . . .      |       | 1815              | 33,120            |
| Edmonson . . . . .     | Colonel John . . . . .          | Brownsville . . . . .    |       | 1825              | 8,005             |
| Elliott . . . . .      | Judge John M. . . . .           | Martinsburg . . . . .    |       | 1869              | 9,214             |
| Estill . . . . .       | Captain James . . . . .         | Irvine . . . . .         |       | 1808              | 10,836            |
| Fayette . . . . .      | General La Fayette . . . . .    | Lexington . . . . .      | ✓     | 1780 ✓            | 35,698 ✕          |
| Fleming . . . . .      | Colonel John . . . . .          | Flemingsburg . . . . .   |       | 1798              | 16,078            |
| Floyd . . . . .        | Colonel John . . . . .          | Prestonsburg . . . . .   |       | 1799              | 11,256            |
| Franklin . . . . .     | Benjamin . . . . .              | Frankfort . . . . .      |       | 1794              | 21,267            |
| Fulton . . . . .       | Robert . . . . .                | Hickman . . . . .        |       | 1845              | 10,005            |

| NAME.                | FOR WHOM NAMED.                    | COUNTY                  | TOWN. | ESTAB-<br>LISHED. | POPUL'N,<br>1890. |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------|-------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Gallatin . . . . .   | Albert . . . . .                   | Warsaw . . . . .        | 1798  | 4,611             |                   |
| Garrard . . . . .    | Governor James . . . . .           | Lancaster . . . . .     | 1796  | 11,138            |                   |
| Grant . . . . .      | Samuel . . . . .                   | Williamstown . . . . .  | 1820  | 12,671            |                   |
| Graves . . . . .     | Captain Benjamin . . . . .         | Mayfield . . . . .      | 1823  | 28,534            |                   |
| Grayson . . . . .    | Colonel William . . . . .          | Litchfield . . . . .    | 1810  | 18,688            |                   |
| Green . . . . .      | General Nathaniel . . . . .        | Greensburg . . . . .    | 1792  | 11,463            |                   |
| Greenup . . . . .    | Governor Christopher . . . . .     | Greenup . . . . .       | 1803  | 11,911            |                   |
| Hancock . . . . .    | John Hancock . . . . .             | Hawesville . . . . .    | 1829  | 9,214             |                   |
| Hardin . . . . .     | Colonel John . . . . .             | Elizabethtown . . . . . | 1792  | 21,304            |                   |
| Harlan . . . . .     | Major Silas . . . . .              | Harlan C. H. . . . .    | 1819  | 6,197             |                   |
| Harrison . . . . .   | Colonel Benjamin . . . . .         | Cynthiana . . . . .     | 1793  | 16,914            |                   |
| Hart . . . . .       | Captain Nathaniel . . . . .        | Munfordsville . . . . . | 1819  | 16,439            |                   |
| Henderson . . . . .  | Colonel Richard . . . . .          | Henderson . . . . .     | 1798  | 29,536            |                   |
| Henry . . . . .      | Patrick Henry . . . . .            | New Castle . . . . .    | 1798  | 14,164            |                   |
| Hickman . . . . .    | Captain Paschal . . . . .          | Clinton . . . . .       | 1821  | 11,637            |                   |
| Hopkins . . . . .    | General Samuel . . . . .           | Madisonville . . . . .  | 1806  | 23,505            |                   |
| Jackson . . . . .    | General Andrew . . . . .           | McKee . . . . .         | 1858  | 8,261             |                   |
| Jefferson . . . . .  | Thomas . . . . .                   | Louisville . . . . .    | 1780  | 188,598           |                   |
| Jessamine . . . . .  | Miss Douglass, massacred . . . . . | Nicholasville . . . . . | 1798  | 11,248            |                   |
| Johnson . . . . .    | Colonel Richard M. . . . .         | Paintsville . . . . .   | 1843  | 11,027            |                   |
| Kenton . . . . .     | Captain Simon . . . . .            | Covington . . . . .     | 1840  | 54,161            |                   |
| Knott . . . . .      | Governor J. Proctor . . . . .      | Hindman . . . . .       | 1884  | 5,438             |                   |
| Knox . . . . .       | General Henry . . . . .            | Barboursville . . . . . | 1799  | 13,762            |                   |
| Larue . . . . .      | John, pioneer . . . . .            | Hodgensville . . . . .  | 1843  | 9,433             |                   |
| Laurel . . . . .     | Laurel river . . . . .             | London . . . . .        | 1825  | 13,747            |                   |
| Lawrence . . . . .   | Captain James . . . . .            | Louisa . . . . .        | 1821  | 17,701            |                   |
| Lee . . . . .        | General Robert E. . . . .          | Beattyville . . . . .   | 1870  | 6,205             |                   |
| Leslie . . . . .     | Governor Preston H. . . . .        | Hyden . . . . .         | 1878  | 3,964             |                   |
| Letcher . . . . .    | Governor Robert P. . . . .         | Whitesburg . . . . .    | 1842  | 6,920             |                   |
| Lewis . . . . .      | Captain Merriwether . . . . .      | Vanceburg . . . . .     | 1866  | 14,803            |                   |
| Lincoln . . . . .    | General Benjamin . . . . .         | Stanford . . . . .      | 1780  | 15,962            |                   |
| Livingston . . . . . | Robert R. . . . .                  | Smithland . . . . .     | 1798  | 9,474             |                   |
| Logan . . . . .      | General Benjamin . . . . .         | Russellville . . . . .  | 1792  | 23,812            |                   |
| Lyon . . . . .       | Chittenden . . . . .               | Eddyville . . . . .     | 1854  | 7,628             |                   |
| Madison . . . . .    | President James . . . . .          | Richmond . . . . .      | 1785  | 24,348            |                   |
| Magoffin . . . . .   | Governor Beriah . . . . .          | Salyersville . . . . .  | 1860  | 9,196             |                   |
| Marion . . . . .     | General Francis . . . . .          | Lebanon . . . . .       | 1834  | 15,048            |                   |
| Marshall . . . . .   | Chief Justice John . . . . .       | Benton . . . . .        | 1842  | 11,287            |                   |
| Martin . . . . .     | Colonel John P. . . . .            | Warfield . . . . .      | 1870  | 4,209             |                   |
| Mason . . . . .      | George . . . . .                   | Maysville . . . . .     | 1788  | 20,773            |                   |
| McCracken . . . . .  | Captain Virgil . . . . .           | Paducah . . . . .       | 1824  | 21,051            |                   |
| McLean . . . . .     | Judge Alney . . . . .              | Calhoon . . . . .       | 1854  | 9,887             |                   |
| Meade . . . . .      | Captain James . . . . .            | Brandenburg . . . . .   | 1823  | 9,484             |                   |
| Menifee . . . . .    | Richard H. . . . .                 | Frenchburg . . . . .    | 1869  | 4,666             |                   |
| Mercer . . . . .     | General Hugh . . . . .             | Harrodsburg . . . . .   | 1785  | 15,034            |                   |
| Metcalfe . . . . .   | Governor Thomas . . . . .          | Edmonton . . . . .      | 1860  | 9,891             |                   |
| Monroe . . . . .     | President James . . . . .          | Tompkinsville . . . . . | 1820  | 10,989            |                   |

| NAME.              | FOR WHOM NAMED.              | COUNTY             | TOWN. | ESTAB-<br>LISHED. | POPUL'N,<br>1890. |
|--------------------|------------------------------|--------------------|-------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Montgomery . . .   | General Richard . . . . .    | Mt. Sterling . . . | 1796  | 12,367            |                   |
| Morgan . . . . .   | General Daniel . . . . .     | West Liberty . . . | 1822  | 11,249            |                   |
| Muhlenberg . . .   | General Peter . . . . .      | Greenville . . .   | 1798  | 17,955            |                   |
| Nelson . . . . .   | Governor Thomas (Va.) . .    | Bardstown . . .    | 1784  | 16,417            |                   |
| Nicholas . . . .   | Colonel George . . . . .     | Carlisle . . .     | 1799  | 10,764            |                   |
| Ohio . . . . .     | Ohio river . . . . .         | Hartford . . .     | 1798  | 22,946            |                   |
| Oldham . . . . .   | Colonel William . . . . .    | Lagrange . . .     | 1823  | 6,754             |                   |
| Owen . . . . .     | Colonel Abraham . . . . .    | Owenton . . .      | 1819  | 17,676            |                   |
| Owsley . . . . .   | Judge William . . . . .      | Booneville . . .   | 1843  | 5,975             |                   |
| Pendleton . . . .  | Edmond (Va.) . . . . .       | Falmouth . . .     | 1798  | 16,346            |                   |
| Perry . . . . .    | Com. Oliver Hazard . . . .   | Hazard . . .       | 1820  | 6,331             |                   |
| Pike . . . . .     | General Zebulon M. . . . .   | Pikeville . . .    | 1821  | 17,378            |                   |
| Powell . . . . .   | Governor Lazarus W. . . . .  | Stanton . . .      | 1852  | 4,698             |                   |
| Pulaski . . . . .  | Count Pulaski . . . . .      | Somerset . . .     | 1798  | 25,731            |                   |
| Robertson . . . .  | Chief Justice George . . . . | Mt. Olivet . . .   | 1867  | 4,684             |                   |
| Rockcastle . . . . | River . . . . .              | Mt. Vernon . . .   | 1810  | 9,841             |                   |
| Rowan . . . . .    | Judge John . . . . .         | Morehead . . .     | 1856  | 6,129             |                   |
| Russell . . . . .  | Colonel William . . . . .    | Jamestown . . .    | 1825  | 8,136             |                   |
| Scott . . . . .    | Governor Charles . . . . .   | Georgetown . . .   | 1792  | 16,546            |                   |
| Shelby . . . . .   | Governor Isaac . . . . .     | Shelbyville . . .  | 1792  | 16,521            |                   |
| Simpson . . . . .  | Captain John . . . . .       | Franklin . . .     | 1819  | 10,878            |                   |
| Spencer . . . . .  | Captain Spear . . . . .      | Taylorsville . . . | 1824  | 6,760             |                   |
| Taylor . . . . .   | General Zachary . . . . .    | Campbellsville .   | 1848  | 9,353             |                   |
| Todd . . . . .     | Colonel John . . . . .       | Elkton . . .       | 1819  | 16,814            |                   |
| Trigg . . . . .    | Colonel Stephen . . . . .    | Cadiz . . . .      | 1820  | 13,902            |                   |
| Trimble . . . . .  | Judge Robert . . . . .       | Bedford . . . .    | 1836  | 7,140             |                   |
| Union . . . . .    | Motto of State Seal . . . .  | Morganfield . . .  | 1811  | 18,229            |                   |
| Warren . . . . .   | General Joseph . . . . .     | Bowling Green .    | 1796  | 30,158            |                   |
| Washington . . . . | General George . . . . .     | Springfield . . .  | 1792  | 13,622            |                   |
| Wayne . . . . .    | General Anthony . . . . .    | Monticello . . .   | 1800  | 12,852            |                   |
| Webster . . . . .  | Daniel . . . . .             | Dixon . . . .      | 1860  | 17,196            |                   |
| Whitley . . . . .  | Colonel William . . . . .    | Williamsburg .     | 1818  | 17,590            |                   |
| Wolfe . . . . .    | Nathaniel . . . . .          | Campton . . .      | 1860  | 7,180             |                   |
| Woodford . . . .   | General William . . . . .    | Versailles . . .   | 1788  | 12,380            |                   |

Indians and Chinese, 108; whites, 1,585,526; colored, 272,981. Total . . 1,858,635

#### GOVERNMENT OF KENTUCKY BEFORE IT BECAME A STATE.

Robert Dinwiddie—called “Lieutenant-Governor”—arrived in Virginia from England early in 1752, and departed in January, 1758. His vacancy was filled for a short time by John Blair, President of the Council.

The Earl of Loudoun was appointed by the King the successor of Dinwiddie, and came to Philadelphia, but never to Virginia.

Francis Fauquier was appointed Lieutenant-governor, and reached Virginia in 1758. He continued Governor until his death, early in 1768, when John Blair, who was still President of the Council, again acted as Governor.

In November, 1768, Norborne Berkeley, Baron de Botetourt, arrived in Virginia as Governor-in-chief. "Solicitous to gratify the Virginians, Botetourt pledged his life and fortune to extend the boundary of Virginia on the west to the Tennessee river, on the parallel of  $36^{\circ} 30'$ . This boundary, Andrew Lewis and Dr. Thomas Walker wrote, would give some room to extend the settlements for ten or twelve years." Botetourt died October, 1770, after two years' service, in which he proved himself a friend of Virginia. The Colonial assembly erected a statue in honor of him, in front of William and Mary College, at Williamsburg, which was destroyed by some vandalism in the Federal army, about 1864.

In 1772, John Murray, Earl of Dunmore (generally called Governor Dunmore), was transferred from the Governorship of New York to that of Virginia. He was the last Colonial Governor. He sent out surveying parties in 1773 and 1774 to survey, for himself, lands along and near the Ohio river.

June 29, 1776, Patrick Henry, Jr., the great orator of the Revolution, was elected the first Republican Governor of Virginia—receiving 60 votes, to 45 cast for Thomas Nelson, Sr., in the convention. The Governors of the State of Virginia, up to the time of the separation of Kentucky and its admission into the Union as a State, were:

|                     |                   |                      |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| June 29, 1776 . . . | Patrick Henry.    | December, 1784 . . . | Patrick Henry.    |
| June 1, 1779 . . .  | Thomas Jeffersou. | December, 1786 . . . | Edmund Randolph.  |
| June 12, 1781 . . . | Thomas Nelson.    | December, 1788 . . . | Beverly Randolph. |
| Nov., 1781 . . .    | Benj. Harrison.   | December, 1791 . . . | Henry Lee.        |

---

#### GOVERNORS, LIEUTENANT-GOVERNORS, AND SECRETARIES OF THE COMMONWEALTH.

- I. Isaac Shelby, the first Governor, took the oath of office on the 4th of June, 1792, under the first Constitution; James Brown, Secretary of State.
- II. James Garrard took the oath of office June 1, 1796. Harry Toulmin, Secretary. The present Constitution was formed 1799.

- III. James Garrard, being eligible, was again elected Governor; Alexander S. Bullitt, Lieutenant-governor; Harry Toulmin, Secretary—1800.
- IV. Christopher Greenup, Governor; John Caldwell, Lieutenant-governor; John Rowan, Secretary—1804.
- V. Charles Scott, Governor; Gabriel Slaughter, Lieutenant-governor; Jesse Bledsoe, Secretary—1808.
- VI. Isaac Shelby, Governor; Richard Hickman, Lieutenant-governor; Martin D. Hardin, Secretary—1812.
- VII. George Madison, Governor; Gabriel Slaughter, Lieutenant-governor; Charles S. Todd, Secretary—1816. Governor Madison died at Paris, Kentucky, on the 14th of October, 1816, and on the 21st of the same month, Gabriel Slaughter, Lieutenant-governor, assumed the duties of executive. John Pope, and after him, Oliver G. Waggoner, Secretary.
- VIII. John Adair, Governor; William T. Barry, Lieutenant-governor; Joseph Cabell Breckinridge, and after him, Thomas B. Monroe, Secretary—1820.
- IX. Joseph Desha, Governor; Robert B. McAfee, Lieutenant-governor; William T. Barry, succeeded by James C. Pickett, Secretary—1824.
- X. Thomas Metcalfe, Governor; John Breathitt, Lieutenant-governor; George Robertson, succeeded by Thomas T. Crittenden, Secretary—1828.
- XI. John Breathitt, Governor; James T. Morehead, Lieutenant-governor; Lewis Sanders, Jr., Secretary. Governor Breathitt died on the 21st of February, 1834, and on the 22d of the same month, James T. Morehead, the Lieutenant-governor, took the oath of office as Governor of the State. John J. Crittenden, William Owsley and Austin P. Cox were, successively, Secretary—1832.
- XII. James Clark, Governor; Charles A. Wickliffe, Lieutenant-governor; James M. Bullock, Secretary. Governor Clark departed this life on the 27th September, 1839, and on the 5th of October, Charles A. Wickliffe, Lieutenant-governor, assumed the duties of Governor—1836.
- XIII. Robert P. Letcher, Governor; Manlius V. Thomson, Lieutenant-governor; James Harlan, Secretary—1840.

XIV. William Owsley, Governor; Archibald Dixon, Lieutenant-governor; Benjamin Hardin, George B. Kinkead and William D. Reed, successively, Secretary—1844.

XV. John J. Crittenden, Governor; John L. Helm, Lieutenant-governor; John W. Finnell, Secretary. Governor Crittenden resigned July 31, 1850, and John L. Helm became Governor, until the first Tuesday of September, 1851. 1848-51.

XVI. Lazarus W. Powell, Governor; John B. Thompson, Lieutenant-governor; James P. Metcalfe, Secretary. 1851-55.

XVII. Charles S. Morehead, Governor; James G. Hardy, Lieutenant-governor; Mason Brown, Secretary. 1855-59.

XVIII. Berial Magoffin, Governor; Linn Boyd, Lieutenant-governor (died December 17, 1859); Thomas B. Monroe, Jr., Secretary. Governor Magoffin resigned August 18, 1862, and James F. Robinson, Speaker of the Senate, became Governor. 1859-63.

XIX. Thomas E. Bramlette, Governor; Richard T. Jacob, Lieutenant-governor; E. L. Van Winkle (died May 23, 1866), succeeded by John S. Van Winkle, Secretary. 1863-67.

XX. John L. Helm, Governor; John W. Stevenson, Lieutenant-governor; Samuel B. Churchill, Secretary. Governor Helm died, September 8, 1867, and John W. Stevenson took the oath as Governor. In August, 1868, he was *elected* Governor, serving until February 13, 1871, when he resigned, to take his seat in the United States Senate, and the Speaker of the State Senate, Preston H. Leslie, became Governor. 1867-71.

XXI. Preston H. Leslie, Governor; John G. Carlisle, Lieutenant-governor; Andrew J. James, succeeded by George W. Craddock, Secretary of State. 1871-75.

XXII. James B. McCreary, Governor; John C. Underwood, Lieutenant-governor; J. Stoddard Johnston, Secretary of State. 1875-1879.

XXIII. Luke P. Blackburn, Governor; James E. Cantrell, Lieutenant-governor; S. B. Churchill, J. S. Blackburn, Secretaries. 1879-83.

XXIV. J. Proctor Knott, Governor; James R. Hindman, Lieutenant-governor; James A. McKenzie, Secretary of State. 1883-87.

XXV. Simon B. Buckner, Governor; James W. Bryan, Lieutenant-governor; George M. Adams, Secretary of State. 1887-91.

XXVI. John Young Brown, Governor; M. C. Alford, Lieutenant-governor; W. J. Hendrick, Attorney-General. 1891-95.

## PARENT SETTLEMENTS IN VIRGINIA AND NORTH CAROLINA, FROM WHICH KENTUCKY RECEIVED ITS FIRST COLONISTS.

In 1584, Sir Walter Raleigh was authorized, by royal patent from Queen Elizabeth, to "discover and occupy such remote and heathen lands as might not be possessed by Christian people, as to him should seem good." Raleigh equipped and sent out upon this mission two commanders, Amadus and Barlow, who landed, in July, upon Roanoke Island, on the shore of North Carolina. Here the "Meteor Flag" of England, as an emblem of authority, was first raised upon the present territory of the United States. After taking formal possession, in the name of his Queen, Amadus returned to England bearing the welcome news of success. In the fullness of her heart, Queen Elizabeth gave to the country the name of *Virginia*, in honor of herself, the virgin queen.

Popular credulity was easily moved by the glowing descriptions of the loveliness of the scenery, the mildness of the climate, and the gentle hospitality of the natives of the new country; and in the following April, 1585, a colony of over one hundred persons embarked in seven vessels, to plant their homes and fortunes there. They landed on Roanoke Island in July. After the trials of a single year, the adventure proved too discouraging, and the colonists returned to England.

In 1587, Raleigh dispatched John White, commissioned as governor of the colony, with over one hundred others, who landed on the northern end of Roanoke Island, and began the foundations of "the City of Raleigh." White returned to England, and left the colonists in other care. Among these was Eleanor Dare, his married daughter, who gave birth to a female infant, the first child born of English parents in America. It was called, from the place of its birth, Virginia Dare.

The liberal provisions of Raleigh, on this last colony, could not avert for it a fate less fortunate than that which befell the first. It was not until 1590, three years after he set sail, that White was able to return to its relief. On landing and searching Roanoke Island and vicinity, not a trace of the lost colonists could be found. Either they perished in some way; or else, in despair, they amalgamated with the Indians, as conjectured by Lawson, the first historian of Carolina. Raleigh now assigned to Thomas Smith and others the privileges of the trade of the Virginia coast, reserving for himself one-fifth of the gold and silver that might be discovered.

In 1607, a fleet of three ships, with one hundred emigrants, under Captain Newport, sailed from England for the coasts of the new Virginia; but distress of weather forced them to put in at Chesapeake Bay. The settlement of Jamestown was established there, and fostered under the wise and energetic administration of Captain John Smith. It is believed that his genius and courage alone saved this settlement from the fate of the colonies of Roanoke. The settlement on the James flourished, and expanded its frontier to the Potomac river in the interior, and southward along the coast toward Albemarle Sound, for over half a century, before it again could awake and arouse an interest strong enough to revive and plan the third and final experiment to establish an English colony on the Carolina coast. A nucleus of attraction had been formed. From time to time some Quakers, and other refugees from religious or political intolerance, settled about the Albemarle coasts, and cultivated friendly relations with the Indian tribes adjacent. In July, 1653, a colony from Virginia, led by Roger Green, settled on the banks of the Roanoke, south of Chowan river.

On the 24th of March, 1663, Charles II. granted to Edward, Earl of Clarendon; Sir John Colleton; Sir William Berkeley; Sir George Carteret, and others, all the country between latitudes  $31^{\circ}$  and  $36^{\circ}$ , from the Atlantic to the Pacific ocean, called Carolina, in honor of the royal donor. The same year, Sir William Berkeley, Governor of the Colony of Virginia, visited the province, and appointed William Drummond its Governor. Extensive as was the munificent grant made, it was enlarged in the proprietary interests of the same parties, in 1665, to include all the country between the Atlantic and Pacific oceans, from latitude  $29^{\circ}$  to  $36^{\circ} 30'$ . Two colonies, Albemarle and Carteret, were established. The first Assembly that made laws for Carolina met in the autumn of 1669; though the "General Assembly of the County of Albemarle" had met two years before.

The proceedings of the colonists of Virginia and North Carolina were of the maternal plants, from which sprang the imperishable germ of liberty, which, after the turbulent agitations of a century, accomplished destiny in the Declaration of Independence, in 1776, and gave to the oppressed of all nations an asylum for the free in the Republic of the United States. Among the powers conceded to the lord proprietors, were those of enacting laws and constitutions for the people, with their advice and consent, or that of their delegates assembled from time to time. No freer country was ever organized by man.

Freedom of conscience, and taxation only with their own consent, were first objects. Exemption from taxation for a year, non-recovery of debts, the cause of action of which arose out of the colony, within five years, a bounty of land to each settler, were provisions which suited the primitive people, who were as free as the air of the mountains, and as rough as the billowy ocean when oppressed. Their sense of manly independence could not brook the restraints of a government imposed from abroad; yet the administration was firm, humane and tranquil, when left to govern themselves—a marked instance of the capacity of man for self-government.

In 1671, Virginia numbered forty thousand souls; Albemarle, as North Carolina was then called, over fourteen hundred. Settlements gradually extended down the coasts, around Capes Fear and Carteret, Clarendon and Port Royal.

The early colonists of Virginia and Carolina gave repeated evidences of their jealous love of liberty, and of their readiness to resist all forms of tyranny, for nearly one hundred years before the War of the Revolution. Not only were these sentiments expressed in frequent protests on occasions of abuse of power by those in authority, but in acts of resistance and rebellion when the impositions became oppressive and flagrant.

From such an ancestral origin remotely came, in the main, the daring and adventurous pioneers of Kentucky, of whose deeds of heroism and adventure their children of to-day love to read, and to hold in proud remembrance.

# GENERAL INDEX.

| PAGES.                                          | PAGES.   |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Adair, Major John . . . . .                     | 111      |
| Battle with Little Turtle . . . . .             | 111      |
| At New Orleans . . . . .                        | 147      |
| Elected governor . . . . .                      | 153      |
| Alien and Sedition Laws . . . . .               | 123      |
| Anderson, General Robert, 1861 . . . . .        | 181      |
| Commands in Kentucky . . . . .                  | 182      |
| Ballard, Captain Bland . . . . .                | 89       |
| Adventures of . . . . .                         | 90       |
| His father killed . . . . .                     | 91       |
| Banking and finance . . . . .                   | 153      |
| Baptists, pioneer . . . . .                     | 158      |
| Battle of the Boards . . . . .                  | 91       |
| Belmont, battle of . . . . .                    | 183      |
| Benham, Captain Robt., escape . . . . .         | 66       |
| Big Bone Lick, visited 1773 . . . . .           | 20       |
| Big Spring, Harrodstown . . . . .               | 23       |
| Blackburn, Luke P., Governor . . . . .          | 215      |
| Blackhoof . . . . .                             | 18       |
| Blue Licks, battle of . . . . .                 | 81       |
| Boiling Spring, cabins 1774 . . . . .           | 23       |
| Boonesborough, constitution . . . . .           | 29       |
| Fight at; garrison . . . . .                    | 46       |
| Besieged by Indians . . . . .                   | 51       |
| Attacked by Duquesne . . . . .                  | 54       |
| Boone, Daniel, visits Kentucky, 1769 . . . . .  | 12       |
| Visit in 1773; disaster . . . . .               | 19       |
| Mission to Kentucky, 1774 . . . . .             | 23       |
| Wataga Council; Boone's Trace . . . . .         | 28       |
| Indians; builds Boonesborough, . . . . .        | 28       |
| Early life and character . . . . .              | 30       |
| Capture and escape . . . . .                    | 52       |
| At Blue Licks . . . . .                         | 81       |
| Last years of . . . . .                         | 123      |
| Boone, Squire, finds Daniel in Ky. . . . .      | 12       |
| Station in Shelby county . . . . .              | 65       |
| Disastrous retreat . . . . .                    | 72       |
| Elected legislator . . . . .                    | 89       |
| Bowman, Col. John, relieves Logan, . . . . .    | 52       |
| Repulse at Chillicothe . . . . .                | 63       |
| Boyle, Gen. J. T., commands in Ky., . . . . .   | 192      |
| Bragg, General, invasion of Ky. by . . . . .    | 193      |
| Breckinridge, Jno., Resolutions 1798, . . . . . | 123      |
| Attorney-General United States, . . . . .       | 133      |
| Breckinridge, Dr. Robert J., Super- . . . . .   |          |
| intendent education . . . . .                   | 175      |
| Breckinridge, John C., Vice-Pres. . . . .       | 173      |
| United States Senator . . . . .                 | 180      |
| Candidate for President . . . . .               | 179      |
| Brown, James, at Danville, 1774 . . . . .       | 23       |
| Secretary of State . . . . .                    | 111      |
| Bryan's station built . . . . .                 | 65       |
| Besieged by Girty . . . . .                     | 78       |
| Buckner, S. B., General . . . . .               | 186      |
| At Fort Donelson . . . . .                      | 186      |
| Buckner, S. B., Gen., elected gov'r . . . . .   | 220      |
| Bullock, W. F., school bill by . . . . .        | 175      |
| Buell, General, commands in Ky. . . . .         | 184-6    |
| Bulger, Captain, at Chillicothe . . . . .       | 63       |
| Bullitt, Capt. Thomas, visit in 1773 . . . . .  | 20       |
| Burr, Aaron, conspiracy . . . . .               | 133      |
| Byrd, Colonel, invades Kentucky . . . . .       | 68       |
| Cahokia, captured by Clark . . . . .            | 56       |
| Calloway, Richard . . . . .                     | 28       |
| Indians capture two daughters . . . . .         | 44       |
| Camp, Red river . . . . .                       | 12       |
| Price's Meadow . . . . .                        | 13       |
| Cherokee Indians, title to Ken- . . . . .       |          |
| tucky . . . . .                                 | 27       |
| Chillicothe, treaty 1774 . . . . .              | 19       |
| Visit of Capt. Bullitt, 1773 . . . . .          | 20       |
| Chickasaw War . . . . .                         | 68       |
| Purchase . . . . .                              | 153      |
| Christian, Col. William, killed . . . . .       | 98       |
| Cincinnati, first trees felled . . . . .        | 22       |
| First name, Losantiville . . . . .              | 104      |
| Circuit Court organized . . . . .               | 88       |
| Clark, Gen. George Rogers, in Ken- . . . . .    |          |
| tucky, 1775 . . . . .                           | 42       |
| Returns to Virginia for aid . . . . .           | 43       |
| Plans Illinois campaign . . . . .               | 55       |
| Builds Fort Jefferson . . . . .                 | 68       |
| Marches on Chillicothe, etc. . . . .            | 69       |
| Bold adventure . . . . .                        | 70       |
| Designs on Detroit . . . . .                    | 71       |
| Expedition against the Indians . . . . .        | 83       |
| Wabash campaign, failure . . . . .              | 99       |
| Last years of . . . . .                         | 124      |
| Clay, Cassius M., on Slavery . . . . .          | 164      |
| Clay, Gen. Green, at Fort Meigs . . . . .       | 143      |
| Clay, Henry, settles in Kentucky . . . . .      | 134      |
| Presidential contests . . . . .                 | 156      |
| For President . . . . .                         | 161      |
| Death of . . . . .                              | 172      |
| Confederate Government . . . . .                | 181      |
| Constitution of 1850 . . . . .                  | 169      |
| Convention, first meeting . . . . .             | 93       |
| Fourth and seventh . . . . .                    | 100, 102 |
| Corn Island at Falls of Ohio . . . . .          | 55       |
| Corn Stalk, chief, defeated . . . . .           | 24       |
| Counties, established (appendix) . . . . .      | 228      |
| Cowan, Jared, killed, 1774 . . . . .            | 23       |
| Cripps and Crist, fight on Salt river . . . . . | 104      |
| Crittenden, John J., Senator . . . . .          | 181      |
| Crittenden, Gen. Geo. B. . . . .                | 185      |
| Croghan, Major, at Fort Sandusky . . . . .      | 144      |
| Cumberland river and mountain . . . . .         |          |
| discovered and named . . . . .                  | 11       |
| Cumberland Presbyterians . . . . .              | 160      |
| Daniel Walker, Attorney-General . . . . .       | 88       |

| PAGES.                                                                  | PAGES.    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Danville, First Lottery Cabins 1774 . . . . .                           | 23        |
| Court House built . . . . .                                             | 88        |
| Chartered . . . . .                                                     | 104       |
| Daviess, Colonel Joseph H., killed . . . . .                            | 135       |
| Davis, Jefferson, President C. S. . . . .                               | 18        |
| Desha, Joseph, Governor . . . . .                                       | 154       |
| Advocacy of States Rights . . . . .                                     | 155       |
| Disciples Church . . . . .                                              | 159       |
| Dick's River . . . . .                                                  | 13        |
| Douglas, James, visit 1773 . . . . .                                    | 20        |
| Dragging Canoe (chief) scene . . . . .                                  | 40        |
| Drennon's Lick visited, 1773 . . . . .                                  | 20        |
| Settled . . . . .                                                       | 37        |
| Dudley, Colonel, defeat . . . . .                                       | 143       |
| Dunmore, Lord, war and treaty . . . . .                                 | 24        |
| Governor of Virginia . . . . .                                          | 19        |
| Duree station massacre . . . . .                                        | 84        |
| Earthquake at New Madrid . . . . .                                      | 136       |
| Eastin, Rev., immigrant troubles . . . . .                              | 94        |
| Educational conventions . . . . .                                       | 218       |
| Elections, State and National, 1876 . . . . .                           | 214       |
| State and National, 1880 . . . . .                                      | 215       |
| State and National, 1884 . . . . .                                      | 217       |
| State election, 1887 . . . . .                                          | 221       |
| National election, 1888 . . . . .                                       | 223       |
| Elizabethtown settled . . . . .                                         | 70        |
| Elk Horn massacre . . . . .                                             | 110       |
| England, war with . . . . .                                             | 68        |
| Troubles with . . . . .                                                 | 135       |
| Second war in . . . . .                                                 | 139       |
| Cruelty in war . . . . .                                                | 143       |
| Peace with . . . . .                                                    | 148       |
| Estill, Captain James, defeat . . . . .                                 | 76        |
| Evans, Lewis, map in 1755 . . . . .                                     | 11        |
| Exchanges in trade . . . . .                                            | 75        |
| Falls of Ohio visited 1773 . . . . .                                    | 20        |
| Clark's Expedition from . . . . .                                       | 55        |
| Fayette County created . . . . .                                        | 70        |
| Females, importation of . . . . .                                       | 72        |
| Filson, John, founds Losantiville . . . . .                             | 104       |
| Fincastle County . . . . .                                              | 21        |
| Finley, John, visits Ky. 1767 and 1769 . . . . .                        | 12        |
| Fiteh, John, great inventor . . . . .                                   | 152       |
| Floyd, Col. John, in Kentucky 1773 . . . . .                            | 21        |
| Defeat . . . . .                                                        | 72        |
| Appointed Judge . . . . .                                               | 88        |
| Killed . . . . .                                                        | 92        |
| Fort Meigs, siege of . . . . .                                          | 143       |
| Fort Sandusky, defense of . . . . .                                     | 144       |
| Forts Donelson and Henry . . . . .                                      | 186       |
| Frankfort, Capitol located at . . . . .                                 | 111       |
| French, sympathy for . . . . .                                          | 112       |
| Hostilities with . . . . .                                              | 125       |
| Louisiana purchased of . . . . .                                        | 133       |
| Frenchtown, battle of . . . . .                                         | 141       |
| Fry, Col. Speed S., kills Zollicoffer . . . . .                         | 185       |
| Garrard, James, elected Governor . . . . .                              | 119       |
| Galaspy, William, at St. Asaph . . . . .                                | 36        |
| Gass, Miss Jennie, slain . . . . .                                      | 76        |
| Genet, French Agent . . . . .                                           | 113       |
| Geology of Kentucky . . . . .                                           | 176       |
| Girty, Simon, at Bryan's Station . . . . .                              | 78        |
| At Blue Licks . . . . .                                                 | 81        |
| Gist, Captain, visits Kentucky . . . . .                                | 11        |
| Greenup, Christopher, Governor . . . . .                                | 133       |
| Guerrillas in Kentucky . . . . .                                        | 200       |
| Habits and Customs . . . . .                                            | 73-75     |
| Hardin, Captain William . . . . .                                       | 98        |
| Hardin, Colonel John, assassinated . . . . .                            | 111       |
| Harmer's Defeat . . . . .                                               | 108       |
| Hard Winter 1779-80 . . . . .                                           | 65        |
| Harrod, James, visit, 1773 . . . . .                                    | 20        |
| Returns to Kentucky 1774 . . . . .                                      | 22        |
| Builds Harrodstown . . . . .                                            | 35        |
| At Bowman's Defeat . . . . .                                            | 63        |
| Harlan, Colonel Silas, killed . . . . .                                 | 82        |
| Harrison, General, in North-west . . . . .                              | 141       |
| Elected President . . . . .                                             | 160       |
| Hart, Nathaniel . . . . .                                               | 27 and 84 |
| Hart, Uncle Dick (Colored) . . . . .                                    | 32        |
| Harrodstown Lottery cabins . . . . .                                    | 23        |
| First Court . . . . .                                                   | 76        |
| Hawes, Richard, Confederate States Governor . . . . .                   | 195       |
| Helm, John L., Governor . . . . .                                       | 208       |
| Henderson, H. A. M., Superintendent Public Instruction . . . . .        | 210       |
| Henderson, Richard, founds Transylvania, builds Boonesborough . . . . . | 27-32     |
| Life of . . . . .                                                       | 31        |
| Hickman, Rev. Wm., first service . . . . .                              | 45        |
| Hinkson Station built . . . . .                                         | 37        |
| And restored . . . . .                                                  | 65        |
| Holder, Capt. Jno., rescues captives . . . . .                          | 44        |
| At Chillicothe defeat . . . . .                                         | 63        |
| Fight near Blue Licks . . . . .                                         | 78        |
| Home Guards, 1861 . . . . .                                             | 182       |
| Hubbell, Captain, Desperate defense . . . . .                           | 109       |
| Hull's surrender, effects . . . . .                                     | 140       |
| Hunter's Life and Habits . . . . .                                      | 13        |
| Improvements, Internal . . . . .                                        | 157       |
| Indians, no Villages in Kentucky . . . . .                              |           |
| Shawanees, Cherokees, Chickasaws, Choctaws . . . . .                    | 14        |
| Tribal Conquests and traditions . . . . .                               | 15        |
| Outrages 1787-90 . . . . .                                              | 103       |
| Indians, Defiant and Warlike . . . . .                                  | 111       |
| Last Incursions . . . . .                                               | 114       |
| Nature and Customs of . . . . .                                         | 129       |
| Inventors, in Kentucky . . . . .                                        | 152       |
| Irvine, Colonel William, rescue . . . . .                               | 77        |
| Captain Christopher, death . . . . .                                    | 99        |
| Jackson, General, at New Orleans . . . . .                              | 146       |
| Jefferson County Established . . . . .                                  | 70        |
| Jefferson, Fort, built . . . . .                                        | 68        |
| Johnson, Colonel Richard M. . . . .                                     | 144       |
| At Battle of the Thames . . . . .                                       | 145       |
| Elected Vice-President . . . . .                                        | 160       |
| Johnson, General A. S., in Kentucky . . . . .                           | 184       |
| Judicial Bodies 1795 . . . . .                                          | 118       |
| Strictures of Governor Desha . . . . .                                  | 155       |
| Old and New Court Contest . . . . .                                     | 154       |
| Judges Elected . . . . .                                                | 169       |
| Superior Court, 1882 . . . . .                                          | 215       |
| Appellate Bench, 1884 . . . . .                                         | 217       |
| Kaskaskia, Clark captures . . . . .                                     | 55        |

GENERAL INDEX.

241

| PAGES.                                                         | PAGES. |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Kennedy, John . . . . .                                        | 28     |
| Kenton, Simon, in Kentucky, 1773 . . . . .                     | 22     |
| Settles in Kentucky, 1775 . . . . .                            | 36     |
| Daring adventures of . . . . .                                 | 62     |
| Last years of . . . . .                                        | 124    |
| Kentucky geography . . . . .                                   | 9      |
| Rivers, physical features, etc. . . . .                        | 10     |
| Origin of name . . . . .                                       | 11     |
| "Dark and Bloody Ground" . . . . .                             | 14, 40 |
| Mohawk title . . . . .                                         | 18     |
| Other explorers in 1773 . . . . .                              | 20     |
| Part of Fincastle county . . . . .                             | 21     |
| Deserted, 1774 . . . . .                                       | 23     |
| Kentucky county organized . . . . .                            | 46     |
| Separate government wanted . . . . .                           | 87     |
| Death-roll, 1780-2 . . . . .                                   | 92     |
| Efforts at Statehood . . . . .                                 | 97     |
| Becomes a State, 1792 . . . . .                                | 107    |
| First State government . . . . .                               | 110    |
| Government in 1795 . . . . .                                   | 118    |
| Second Constitution . . . . .                                  | 125    |
| Prosperity of . . . . .                                        | 135    |
| War spirit in 1812-15 . . . . .                                | 140    |
| Geology and soils . . . . .                                    | 176    |
| Neutrality 1861 . . . . .                                      | 180    |
| Battle ground, 1862 . . . . .                                  | 185    |
| C. S. Government organized . . . . .                           | 185    |
| Confederates retreat from . . . . .                            | 186    |
| Martial law in . . . . .                                       | 192    |
| Invaded by C. S. Army . . . . .                                | 193    |
| Reign of Terror . . . . .                                      | 200    |
| Troops in the late war . . . . .                               | 201    |
| Civil and military condition . . . . .                         | 206    |
| Condition and needs . . . . .                                  | 218    |
| Centennial year, 1892 . . . . .                                | 224    |
| Governors of (appendix) . . . . .                              | 231    |
| Counties of (appendix) . . . . .                               | 228    |
| Sources of colonization (ap.) . . . . .                        | 234    |
| Kincheloe Station massacre . . . . .                           | 82     |
| Knott, J. Proctor, Governor . . . . .                          | 216    |
| Knox, Colonel John, in Ky., 1769-71 . . . . .                  | 13     |
| Know Nothing Party . . . . .                                   | 172    |
| Land Law of 1779 . . . . .                                     | 64     |
| Land surveys and litigation . . . . .                          | 84     |
| Laws and litigation . . . . .                                  | 120    |
| Sharks . . . . .                                               | 120    |
| Leestown Station (Frankfort) . . . . .                         | 45     |
| Legislature of 1795 . . . . .                                  | 118    |
| Leslie, Preston H., Governor . . . . .                         | 209    |
| Lewis, Col. Andrew, commands at Point Pleasant, 1774 . . . . . | 24     |
| Lexington, site named . . . . .                                | 37     |
| First improved, 1779 . . . . .                                 | 65     |
| Prosperity in 1820 . . . . .                                   | 155    |
| Lillard's Spring, visited 1773 . . . . .                       | 20     |
| Limestone (Maysville) settled . . . . .                        | 37     |
| Lincoln county created . . . . .                               | 70     |
| Lincoln, Abraham, President . . . . .                          | 179    |
| Proposes to pay for freedmen . . . . .                         | 187    |
| Emancipation Proclamation . . . . .                            | 196    |
| Assassination of . . . . .                                     | 206    |
| Linn, Capt., improves at Louisville . . . . .                  | 61     |
| Little Mountain, battle of . . . . .                           | 76     |
| Logan, Col. Benj., fortifies, 1775 . . . . .                   | 36     |
| Heroic defense of fort . . . . .                               | 51     |
| Logan, Col. Benj., at Chillicothe . . . . .                    | 63     |
| Re-enforcement for Blue Licks . . . . .                        | 81     |
| Miami campaign . . . . .                                       | 99     |
| Logston, Joe, noted renouncer . . . . .                        | 114    |
| Long Hunters in Kentucky, 1769-71 . . . . .                    | 13     |
| Loughrey, Col. Archy, massacre . . . . .                       | 71     |
| Louisville, forts built, 1778-82 . . . . .                     | 61     |
| Prosperity in 1820 . . . . .                                   | 155    |
| Lynch, Capt., station . . . . .                                | 89     |
| Lythe, Rev. J., at Boonesborough . . . . .                     | 45     |
| Magoffin, B., Governor, war protest . . . . .                  | 182    |
| Resigns, 1862 . . . . .                                        | 193    |
| Marshall, Gen. Humphrey . . . . .                              | 117    |
| Marshall, Thomas F. . . . .                                    | 157    |
| Martin's Station restored . . . . .                            | 65     |
| Captured by Col. Byrd . . . . .                                | 69     |
| Massac, old French fort . . . . .                              | 55     |
| Maulding's Station, Logan county . . . . .                     | 70     |
| Maysville chartered . . . . .                                  | 104    |
| May, John, Clerk of Court . . . . .                            | 88     |
| May, Capt., captured . . . . .                                 | 109    |
| McAfee Bros., visit 1773 . . . . .                             | 20     |
| McAfee Station improved . . . . .                              | 65     |
| McDowell, Sam'l, made Judge . . . . .                          | 88     |
| McClelland station fort . . . . .                              | 45     |
| McCreary, James B., Governor . . . . .                         | 213    |
| McGary, Capt. Hugh, arrives . . . . .                          | 37     |
| At Blue Licks . . . . .                                        | 81     |
| McKnitt's massacre . . . . .                                   | 98     |
| Menifee, Richard H. . . . .                                    | 157    |
| Merchandise and merchants . . . . .                            | 89     |
| Merrill, Mrs., heroic defense . . . . .                        | 103    |
| Methodists, pioneer . . . . .                                  | 159    |
| Mexican war, Kentucky troops in . . . . .                      | 165    |
| Conquest by Scott . . . . .                                    | 167    |
| Mexico, treaty with . . . . .                                  | 168    |
| Mill Spring, battle of . . . . .                               | 185    |
| Monk, Estill, slave, his gallantry, 76, 78                     | 78     |
| Morehead, James T., Lieut.-Gov. . . . .                        | 160    |
| Morehead, Charles S., Governor . . . . .                       | 172    |
| Morgan, Gen. John H., cavalry raid in Kentucky . . . . .       | 188    |
| Invades Kentucky again . . . . .                               | 197    |
| Crosses the Ohio . . . . .                                     | 198    |
| His death . . . . .                                            | 199    |
| National Centennial, 1889 . . . . .                            | 223    |
| Naval defense, Clark's . . . . .                               | 70     |
| Nelson, Fort, at Louisville . . . . .                          | 61     |
| Neutrality of Kentucky, 1861 . . . . .                         | 180    |
| New Orleans, battle of . . . . .                               | 147    |
| Newspaper, first . . . . .                                     | 101    |
| Nicojack Indians, raid on . . . . .                            | 114    |
| Nicholas, George, Attorney-General . . . . .                   | 111    |
| Oconostoto (chief), at Wataga . . . . .                        | 46     |
| Ohio Land Company . . . . .                                    | 11     |
| Old court and New court . . . . .                              | 154    |
| Owen, Colonel Abraham, station . . . . .                       | 89     |
| Killed at Tippecanoe . . . . .                                 | 135    |
| Paducah, attacked by Forest . . . . .                          | 200    |
| Panic, financial, 1873 . . . . .                               | 213    |
| Paris, first chartered Hopewell . . . . .                      | 104    |
| Patterson, Robert, visits Ky., 1775 . . . . .                  | 37     |
| Trip to Virginia for supplies . . . . .                        | 45     |
| Improves Lexington . . . . .                                   | 65     |
| Founds Cincinnati . . . . .                                    | 104    |

| PAGES.                                                            | PAGES.   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Perry, Commodore Oliver H., victory on Lake Erie . . . . .        | 144      |
| Perryville, battle of . . . . .                                   | 195      |
| Pickett, J. Desha, Superintendent Public Instruction . . . . .    | 215      |
| Progress under . . . . .                                          | 222      |
| Pittman's station built . . . . .                                 | 65       |
| Point Pleasant, battle 1774 . . . . .                             | 24       |
| Political parties, 1867 . . . . .                                 | 207      |
| Population by census notes . . . . .                              | 220      |
| Powell's Valley . . . . .                                         | 11       |
| Powell, Lazarus W., Governor . . . . .                            | 171      |
| Power, Thomas, Spanish agent . . . . .                            | 119      |
| Pre-historic remains . . . . .                                    | 21       |
| Presbyterians, pioneer . . . . .                                  | 159      |
| Preston, William, surveyor . . . . .                              | 21       |
| Preston, General William . . . . .                                | 196      |
| Proctor, Rev. Joseph, bravery of . . . . .                        | 77       |
| Raisin, battle and massacre . . . . .                             | 141      |
| Randolph, Thomas, heroic defense . . . . .                        | 83       |
| Ray, General William, escape . . . . .                            | 47       |
| Reforms in legislation . . . . .                                  | 217      |
| Reign of Terror in Kentucky, 1864 . . . . .                       | 200      |
| Resolutions of 1798 . . . . .                                     | 123      |
| Relief and Anti-Relief parties . . . . .                          | 153      |
| Religion, early, in Kentucky . . . . .                            | 158      |
| Richmond, battle of . . . . .                                     | 193      |
| Robinson, Camp Dick, 1861 . . . . .                               | 182      |
| Robinson, James F., Governor . . . . .                            | 193      |
| Rogers, Captain David, massacre . . . . .                         | 66       |
| Roman Catholics, pioneer . . . . .                                | 158      |
| Royal Spring (Georgetown) fortified . . . . .                     | 37       |
| Ruddles Station captured . . . . .                                | 69       |
| Saltville, battle of . . . . .                                    | 200      |
| Sandusky in Kentucky, 1774 . . . . .                              | 22       |
| Sandusky, fort . . . . .                                          | 144      |
| Station built . . . . .                                           | 45       |
| Schools in Kentucky . . . . .                                     | 174      |
| Transylvania founded . . . . .                                    | 174      |
| County seminaries . . . . .                                       | 174      |
| Common School System . . . . .                                    | 175      |
| Great Reforms . . . . .                                           | 209, 222 |
| Scott, Gen. Chas., Wabash expedit' n . . . . .                    | 169      |
| Elected Governor . . . . .                                        | 135      |
| Sebastian, Judge, intrigue with Spain . . . . .                   | 119      |
| Senators' first United States . . . . .                           | 111      |
| Shelby, Isaac, first Governor . . . . .                           | 111      |
| Life and Services . . . . .                                       | 113      |
| Again Governor . . . . .                                          | 139      |
| Shiloh, battle of . . . . .                                       | 187      |
| Slavery, African . . . . .                                        | 126      |
| Agitation of question . . . . .                                   | 164      |
| Abolition in Kentucky . . . . .                                   | 201      |
| Slaves, Lincoln's proposition . . . . .                           | 187      |
| Smith, Z. F., elected Superintendent Public Instruction . . . . . | 208      |
| School reform . . . . .                                           | 209      |
| Spanish intrigues . . . . .                                       | 88       |
| Same renewed . . . . .                                            | 101      |
| Conflict of opinion . . . . .                                     | 102      |
| Last intrigues . . . . .                                          | 119      |
| Spies, for Kentucky . . . . .                                     | 47       |
| For Illinois . . . . .                                            | 52       |
| Stanwix, fort, treaty of . . . . .                                | 19       |
| St. Asaph, fort, built, 1775 . . . . .                            | 35       |
| Sieged . . . . .                                                  | 51       |
| St. Clair, General, defeat . . . . .                              | 110      |
| State Guards, 1861 . . . . .                                      | 182      |
| Centennial, 1802 . . . . .                                        | 224      |
| Stevenson, John W., Governor . . . . .                            | 208      |
| Stewart, John, captured with Boone . . . . .                      | 12       |
| Stoner, Michael, in Kentucky . . . . .                            | 23       |
| Suffrage to the Colored Citizens . . . . .                        | 212      |
| Sumpter, fort, fired on . . . . .                                 | 181      |
| Taylor, Hancock, in Ky., 1773 . . . . .                           | 21       |
| Killed in 1774 . . . . .                                          | 23       |
| Taylor, Gen. Zachary, Mexican War . . . . .                       | 165      |
| Battles of Monterey and Buena Vista . . . . .                     | 166      |
| Elected President . . . . .                                       | 168      |
| Tecumseh, Chief, at Malden . . . . .                              | 143      |
| Killed by Colonel Johnson . . . . .                               | 146      |
| Thames, Battle of . . . . .                                       | 145      |
| Tinsley, Rev. Peter, First Services . . . . .                     | 45       |
| Tippecanoe, Battle of . . . . .                                   | 135      |
| Todd, Captain Levi . . . . .                                      | 63       |
| Todd, Jno., Elected Representative . . . . .                      | 70       |
| Killed at Blue Licks . . . . .                                    | 82       |
| Toulmin, Harry . . . . .                                          | 119      |
| Transylvania Company, purchase Kentucky . . . . .                 | 28       |
| Begin Work; Governments . . . . .                                 | 38       |
| Protest; Virginia Annuls . . . . .                                | 39       |
| Treaties; Fort Stanwix; Dunmore's; Wataga . . . . .               | 19       |
| With England . . . . .                                            | 87       |
| Disregarded . . . . .                                             | 97       |
| Of Madrid . . . . .                                               | 119      |
| Trigg, Stephen, Elected Representative . . . . .                  | 70       |
| Killed at Blue Licks . . . . .                                    | 82       |
| Truman, Major, Assassinated . . . . .                             | 111      |
| Tyler's Station . . . . .                                         | 89       |
| Vincennes, Captured by Clark . . . . .                            | 56       |
| Lost, and Captured again . . . . .                                | 57       |
| Virginia's Gift of Territory . . . . .                            | 93       |
| Adopts U. S. Constitution . . . . .                               | 98       |
| Walker, Dr., Visits Kentucky in 1750 . . . . .                    | 11       |
| Wataga, Treaty of . . . . .                                       | 19, 28   |
| War Between North and South . . . . .                             | 180      |
| Wayne, General Anthony, Victory . . . . .                         | 112      |
| Whippoorwill Station, Logan County . . . . .                      | 70       |
| Whitley, Captain William, Station . . . . .                       | 45       |
| Rescue of Mrs. McClure . . . . .                                  | 94       |
| Raid on Nicajack Indians . . . . .                                | 114      |
| Whittaker, Captain, Severe Fight . . . . .                        | 72       |
| Wickliffe, Charles A., Governor . . . . .                         | 160      |
| Wilderness Road, Boone's . . . . .                                | 28       |
| Wild Cat and Schoolmaster . . . . .                               | 92       |
| Wilkinson, General, Wabash Expedition . . . . .                   | 109      |
| Intrigue with Spain . . . . .                                     | 119      |
| Williams, General John S. . . . .                                 | 167      |
| United States Senator . . . . .                                   | 214      |
| Women, First White in Kentucky . . . . .                          | 37       |
| Strategy at Bryan's Station . . . . .                             | 80       |
| Yadkin River, North Carolina . . . . .                            | 12       |
| Zollicoffer, General, killed . . . . .                            | 185      |

92-168 m

To establish court of justice.

To organize and drill men to be soldiers.

To prevent swearing & Sabbath breaking.

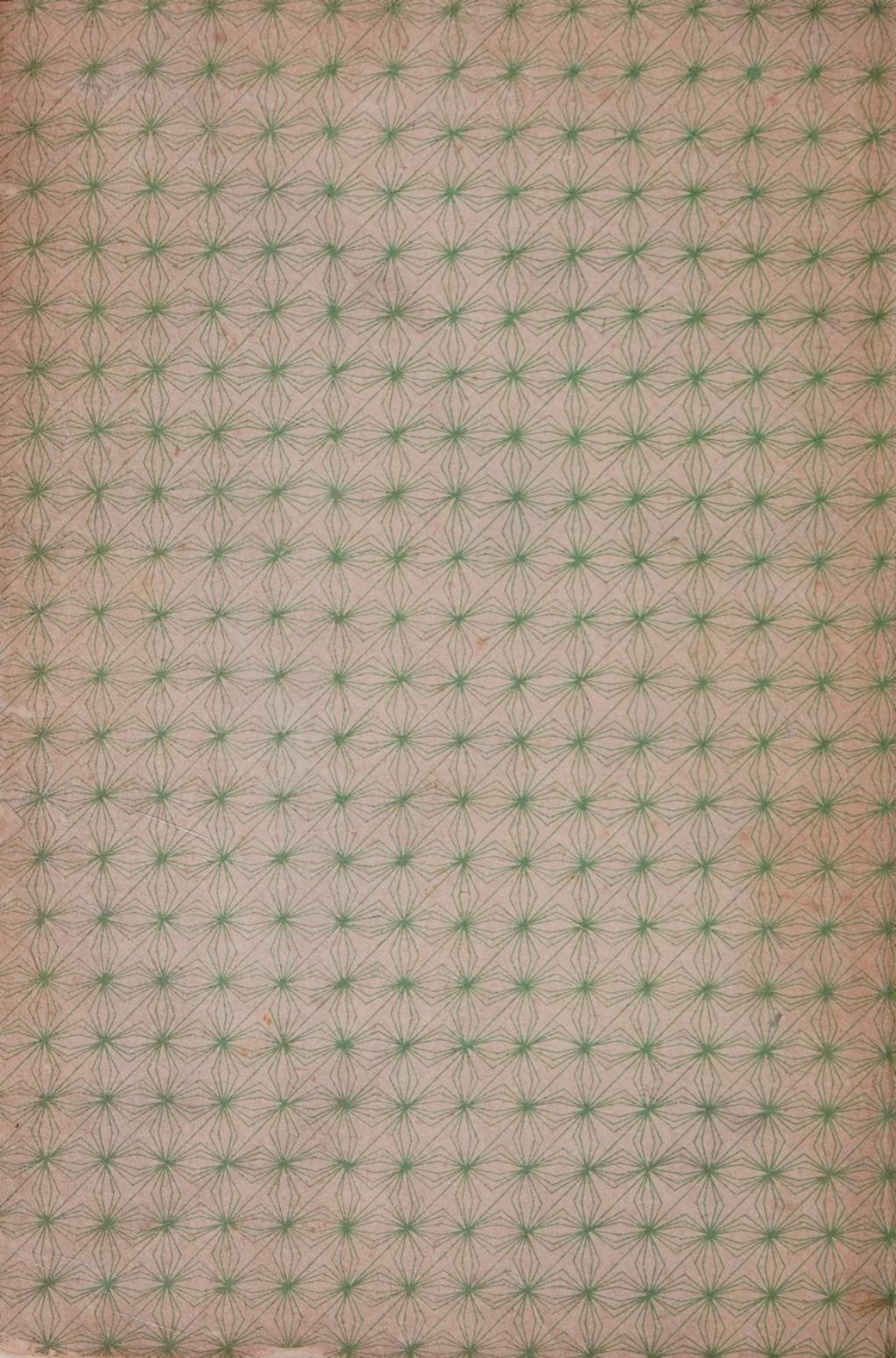
To take a man's property for debt.

To choose a clerk of the court and sheriff and to decide what salary they should be paid.

To decide which land was to be hunting grounds and which to be farm lands.

To improve their stock horses and cattle.

To establish a time of the year when game was to be killed.



Charles Bissell

Bissell

